







ॐ

# THE BHAGĀVADGĪTĀ

or

The Song Divine

( With Sanskrit text and an English translation )



Gita Press, Gorakhpur  
India

First	Editions	1,65,250 Copies, 1943-1957
Tenth	Edition	20,000 Copies, 1958
Eleventh	Edition	40,000 Copies, 1959
Total		2,25,250 Copies

Price 0-4-0  
Bound 0

## Publisher's Note

As a book of scripture, the *Bhagavadgītā* has assumed a position of universal interest. Its teachings have gained appreciation not only in India, but far beyond its borders. Our Gītā-Library alone comprises about 1300 editions of the *Bhagavadgītā* published in 32 different languages including 8 foreign languages. And the Gita Press itself has struck off up to date 92,14,000 copies of this wonderful book within the last thirty-five years. This is our apology for bringing out this English edition of the *Gītā* in pocket-size and in a popular form. We trust it will find

your with the English-reading public. The English translation of this edition has been based on the Hindi rendering of the *Gītā* made by Syt. Jayadayal Goyandka and appearing in the Gita-Tattva Number of the Hindi monthly 'Kalyan', published by the Gita Press. In preparing the present English translation, the translators have made use, every now and then, of other English translations of the *Gītā*, and express their grateful acknowledgement to the same.

In order to add to the utility of this small volume an introduction by Syt. Jayadayal Goyandka and a synopsis of the *Gītā* have been prefixed to the translation and an article by the same author bearing on the *Gītā* has been appended there to.



## The Greatness of the Gita

Truly speaking, none has power to describe in words the glory of the *Gītā*, for it is a book containing the highest esoteric doctrines. It is the essence of the Vedas; its language is so

sweet and simple that man can easily understand it after a little practice; but the thoughts are so deep that none can arrive at their end even after constant study throughout a life-time. Every day they exhibit new facets of Truth, therefore they remain ever fresh and new. When scrutinized with a concentrated mind, possessed of faith and reverence every verse of the *Gītā* will clearly appear as full of the deepest mystery. The manner in which the *Gītā* describes the virtues, glory and secrets of God is hardly found in any other scripture; for in other books, the teachings are generally mixed up, more or less, with worldly subjects; but the *Gītā* uttered by the Lord is such an incomparable book that not a word will be found in it, which is devoid of some spiritual import.

That is why Śrī Vedayāsa, after describing the *Gītā* in the *Mahābhārata*, said in the end :—

गीता सुगीता कर्तव्या किमन्यैः शास्त्रविस्तरैः ।  
या स्वयं पद्मनाभस्य मुखपद्माद्विनिःसृता ॥

The *Gītā* should be carefully studied, i. e., after reading the text, its meaning and idea should be gathered and held in the mind. It emanated from the lotus-like lips of Bhagavān Viṣṇu Himself, from whose navel sprung the lotus. What is the use of studying the other elaborate scriptures ? Moreover, the Lord Himself also described its glory at the end of the *Gītā* ( *Vide* Chapter XVIII verses 68 to 71 ).

All men, irrespective of Varṇa and Āśrama, possess the right to study the



*Gītā*; the only qualifications needed are faith and reverence, for it is God's injunction to propagate the *Gītā* only among His devotees, and He further said that women, Vaiśyas, Śūdras and even men born of sinful wombs can attain the supreme state of salvation, if they cultivate devotion to Him. And through worship of Him by the performance of their own nature-born duties, men can attain perfection ( Chapter XVIII verse 46 ). Reflection on these verses make it clear that all men have equal right to God-Realization.

But owing to lack of understanding of the truth behind this subject, many persons who have only heard the name of the *Gītā*, make this assertion that the book is intended only for monks and

ascetics, and they refrain from plaining the book for study before their children out of fear lest through knowledge of the *Gītā* the latter renounce their hearths and homes and turn ascetics themselves. But they should consider the fact that Arjuna, who had, due to infatuation, prepared himself to turn away from the duty of a Kṣatriya and live on alms, being influenced by the most secret and mysterious teachings of the *Gītā*, lived the life of a householder all his life and performed his duties: how can that very *Gītā* produce this diametrically opposite result?

Therefore, men who desire their own welfare should give up this delusion and with utmost faith and reverence induce their children to study the *Gītā*,

understanding the meaning and the underlying idea of every verse, and while studying and reflecting on it themselves, should, according to the injunction of the Lord, earnestly take to spiritual practice. For obtaining this most valuable human body, it is improper to waste even a single moment of one's time in indulging in transient enjoyments, the roots of sorrow.

### Principal Teachings of the Gita

For His own realization, God has laid down in the *Gītā* two principal ways—( 1 ) Sāṅkhyayoga, and ( 2 ) Karmayoga. Of these—

( 1 ) All objects being unreal like the water in a mirage, or the creation of a dream, Guṇas, which are the products



of Māyā, move in the Guṇas, understanding this the sense of doership should be lost with regard to all activities of the mind, senses and the body ( Chapter V verses 8, 9 ), and being established ever in identity with all-pervading God, the embodiment of Truth, Knowledge and Bliss, consciousness should be lost of the existence of any other being but God. This is the practice of Sāṅkhyayoga.

( 2 ) Regarding everything as belonging to God, maintaining equality in success or failure, renouncing attachment and the desire for fruit, all works should be done according to God's behests and only for the sake of God ( Chapter II verse 48; Chapter V verse 10 ); and, with utmost faith and reverence, surrendering oneself to

God through mind, speech and body, constant meditation on God's Form with remembrance of His names, virtues and glory, should be practised ( Chapter VI verse 47 ). This is the practice of Yoga by disinterested action.

The result of both these practices being one, they are regarded as one in reality ( Chapter V verses 4, 5 ). But during the period of practice, they being different according to the qualifications of the practisant, the two paths have been separately described ( Chapter III verse 3 ). Therefore, the same man cannot tread both the paths at one and the same time, even as though there may be two roads to the Ganges, a person cannot proceed by both the paths at the same time. Out of these, Karmayoga cannot be

practised in the stage of Sannyāsa, for in that stage renunciation of Karma in every form has been advised. The practice of Sāṅkhyayoga, however, is possible in every Āśrama, or stage of life.

If it is argued that the Lord has described Sāṅkhyayoga as synonymous with Sannyāsa, therefore, Sannyāsis or monks alone are entitled to practise it, and not householders, the argument is untenable, because in the course of His description of Sāṅkhyayoga in Chapter II verses II to 30, the Lord, here and there, showed to Arjuna that he was qualified to fight, even according to that standard. If householders were ever disqualified for Sāṅkhyayoga, how could these statements of the Lord be reconciled ? True, there is this special



saving clause that the practicant qualified for the path of Sāṅkhya should be devoid of identification with the body: for so long as there is identification of the ego with the body, the practice of Sāṅkhyayoga cannot be properly understood. That is why the Lord described the practice of Sāṅkhya-yoga as difficult (Chapter V verse 6) and disinterested Karmayoga, being easier of practice, the Lord exhorted Arjuna, every now and then, to practise it, together with constant meditation on Him.

यं ब्रह्मा वरुणेन्द्ररुद्रमरुतः स्तुन्वन्ति दिव्यैः स्तवै-  
र्वेदैः साङ्गपदक्रमोपनिषदैर्गायन्ति यं सामगाः ।  
ध्यानावस्थिततद्गतेन मनसा पश्यन्ति यं योगिनो  
यस्यान्तं न विदुः सुरासुरगणा देवाय तस्मै नमः ॥



“We bow to that Supreme Puruṣa, Nārāyaṇa, who is extolled even by great gods like Brahmā, Varuṇa ( the god of water ), Indra ( the god of rain ), Rudra ( the god of destruction ), and the Maruts ( the wind-gods ) through celestial hymns; whose glories are sung by those proficient in chanting the Sāmaveda through the Vedas along with the six Angas ( branches of knowledge auxiliary to the Vedas ), Pada ( division of the Vedic text into separate words ), Krama and Jaṭā ( particular forms of reciting the Vedas ) and the Upaniṣads; who is perceived by the Yogis by means of their mind made steady through meditation and fixed on the Lord; and whose reality is not known even to gods and Asuras.”

शान्ताकारं भुजगशयनं पद्मनाभं सुरेशं  
 विश्वाधारं गगनसदृशं मेघवर्णं शुभाङ्गम् ।  
 लक्ष्मीकान्तं कमलनयनं योगिभिर्ध्यानगम्यं  
 वन्दे विष्णुं भवभयहरं सर्वलोकैकनाथम् ॥

“Obeisance to Viṣṇu, the dispeller of the fear of rebirths, the one Lord of all the regions, possessed of a tranquil form, lying on a bed of snake, from whose navel has sprung the lotus, the Lord of all celestials, the support of the universe, similar to the sky, possessed of the colour of a cloud and possessed of handsome limbs. the Lord of Lakṣmī ( the Goddess of Wealth ), having lotus-like, eyes and realized by Yogis in meditation.”

Jayadayal Goyandka



## Synopsis of the Gita

No. of Verse	Subject Discussed
--------------	-------------------

### Chapter I entitled "The Yoga of Dejection of Arjuna."

- |       |  |
|-------|--|
| 1-11  | Description of the principal warriors on both sides with their fighting qualities. |
| 12-19 | Blowing of conches by the warriors on both sides.                                  |

20-27 Arjuna observes the warriors drawn up for battle.

28-47 Overwhelmed by infatuation, Arjuna gives expression to his faint-heartedness, tenderness and grief.

## Chapter II entitled "Sankhyayoga, or the Yoga of Knowledge."

1-10 Arjuna and Śrī Kṛṣṇa discussing Arjuna's faint-heartedness.

11-30 Sāṅkhyayoga ( the Yoga of Knowledge ) described.

31-38 The Kṣatriya's duty to engage himself in fight.

39-53 Karmayoga ( the Yoga of Selfless Action ) described.



No. of Verse      Subject Discussed

54-72    Marks of the man of stable mind and his glories described.

Chapter III entitled "Karmayoga, or the Yoga of Action."

- 1-8      Importance of the performance of duty, in a detached way, according to both Jñānayoga and Karmayoga.
- 9-16    The necessity of performing sacrifices, etc.
- 17-24   The necessity for action on the part of the wise, and even on the part of God Himself, for the good of the world.
- 25-35   Marks of the wise and the unwise; instruction about perform-

ance of action without attraction  
and repulsion.

36-43 How to overcome desire.

Chapter IV entitled "The Yoga of  
Knowledge as well as the  
disciplines of Action and  
Knowledge."

1-18 The glory of God with attributes;  
Karmayoga, or selfless action,  
described.

19-23 The conduct of Yogis and sages,  
its glory described.

24-32 Different forms of sacrifices  
described with their fruits.

33-42 The glory of Knowledge  
described.

## Chapter V entitled "The Yoga of Action and Knowledge."

- |       |   |
|-------|---|
| 1-6   | Sāṅkhyayoga and the Yoga of disinterested action described.             |
| 7-12  | Marks of the Sāṅkhyayogi and Niṣkāma Karmayogi—their glories described. |
| 13-26 | Jñānayoga, or the Yoga of Knowledge.                                    |
| 27-29 | Dhyānayoga, or meditation, together with Devotion, described.           |

## Chapter VI entitled "The Yoga of Self-Control."

- |     |  |
|-----|--|
| 1-4 | Karmayoga, or the Yoga of disinterested Action, described; marks of one who has attained Yoga. |
|-----|--|



- | No. of Verse | Subject Discussed   |
|--------------|---|
| 5-10         | Urging one to uplift the self; marks of the God-Realized soul.          |
| 11-32        | Detailed description of Dhyāna-yoga.                                    |
| 33-36        | The question of Mind-control discussed.                                 |
| 37-47        | The fate of one who falls from Yoga; the glory of Dhyānayoga described. |

Chapter VII entitled "The Yoga of Jnana ( Knowledge of Nirguna Brahma ) and Vijnana ( Knowledge of Manifest Divinity )."

- |     |  |
|-----|--|
| 1-7 | Wisdom with real Knowledge of Manifest Divinity. |
|-----|--|

No. of Verse	Subject Discussed
--------------	-------------------

- |       |   |
|-------|---|
| 8-12  | Inherence of God in all objects as their Cause.   |
| 13-19 | Condemnation of men of demoniacal nature and praise of devotees.  |
| 20-23 | The question of worship of other gods.  |
| 24-30 | Condemnation of men, who are ignorant of the glory and true nature of God, and approbation of those who know them." |

### Chapter VIII entitled "The Yoga of the Indestructible Brahma."

- |     |   |
|-----|---|
| 1-7 | Answer to Arjuna's seven questions on Brahma, Adhyātma and Karma ( Action ), etc. |
|-----|---|

No. of Verse      Subject Discussed

8-22    The subject of Bhaktiyoga discussed.

23-28    The bright and dark paths described.

Chapter IX entitled "The Yoga of the Sovereign Science and the Sovereign Secret."

1-6    The subject of Jñāna (Knowledge) with its glory described.

7-10    The origin of the world discussed.

11-15    Condemnation of men of the demoniacal nature, who despise God, and the method of Bhajana of men possessed of the divine nature.

No. of Verse	Subject Discussed
16-19	Description of God, as the soul of everything, and His glory.
20-25	the fruits of worship with a motive and without motive.
26-28	The glory of Devotion practised disinterestedly.

### Chapter X entitled "The Yoga of Divine Glories."

- 1-7 Description of God's glories and power of Yoga with the fruit of their knowledge.
- 8-11 Bhaktiyoga—its fruit and glory.
- 12-18 Arjuna offers his praises to God and prays to the Lord for a description of His glories and power of Yoga.



No. of Verse      Subject Discussed

19-42    The Lord describes His glories  
          and power of Yoga.

Chapter XI entitled "The Yoga  
of the Vision of the  
Universal Form."

- 1-4    Arjuna prays to the Lord for a  
      vision of His Universal Form.
- 5-8    The Lord describes His  
      Universal Form.
- 9-14   The Universal Form described  
      by Sañjaya to Dhṛtarāṣṭra.
- 15-31   Arjuna sees the Lord's Universal  
      Form and offers praises to the  
      Lord.
- 32-34   God describes His glory and  
      exhorts Arjuna to fight.

- 35-46    Overtaken by fright, Arjuna offers praises to God, and prays for a sight of the Lord's Four-armed Form.
- 47-50    The Lord describes the glory of the vision of His Universal Form, and reveals to Arjuna His Four-armed, gentle Form.
- 51-55    The impossibility of obtaining a sight of the Four-armed Form without exclusive Devotion, which is described with its fruit.

Chapter XII entitled "The Yoga of Devotion."

- 1-12    Respective merits of the worshippers of God with Form and without Form, and the means of God-Realization.

No. of Verse      Subject Discussed

13-20    Marks of the God-realized soul.  
Chapter XIII entitled "The Yoga of  
Discrimination between the Field  
and the Knower of the Field."

1-18    The subject of "Field" and the  
Knower of the "Field" together  
with Knowledge.

19-34    The subject of Prakṛti and  
Puruṣa ( Matter and Spirit )  
together with knowledge.

Chapter XIV entitled "The Yoga  
of Classification of the  
three Gunas."

1-4    The glory of Knowledge; evolu-  
tion of the world from Prakṛti  
and Puruṣa.



- 5-18    The qualities of Sattva, Rajas and  
         Tamas described.
- 19-27   Means of God-Realization, and  
         marks of the soul who has  
         transcended the Guṇas.

Chapter XV entitled "The Yoga of  
the Supreme Person."

- I-6    Description of the Universe as a  
         tree and the means of God-  
         Realization.
- 7-11   The Jivātmā, or individual soul.
- 12-15   God and His Glory described.
- 16-20   The perishable ( bodies of all  
         beings ),    the    imperishable  
         ( Jivātmā )    and    the Supreme  
         Person.

**Chapter XVI entitled "The Yoga of Discrimination between the Divine and the Demoniactal Properties."**

- 1-5    The Divine and the demoniactal properties described with their fruit.
- 6-20    Marks of men possessed of the demoniactal properties and their damnation described.
- 21-24    Instruction about renouncing conduct opposed to the scriptures and exhortation to follow the scriptures.

**Chapter XVII entitled "The Yoga of Classification of the Threefold Faith."**

- 1-6    Discussion on Faith and on the fate of men who perform austere

penance not enjoined by the scriptures.

7-22      Different kinds of food, sacrifice, penance and charity described.

23-28      The meaning and intention of uttering "Om Tat Sat" explained.

### Chapter XVIII entitled "The Yoga of Liberation through the Path of Knowledge and Self-Surrender."

1-12      The Subject of Tyāga or Relinquishment.

13-18      Causes of Karma according to the Sāṅkhya system.

19-40      Classification of knowledge, action doer, reason, firmness and joy according to the three Guṇas.

No. of Verse      Subject Discussed

- 41-48   Duties attaching to each caste  
and the fruit of their performance.
- 49-55   The path of Knowledge described.
- 56-66   The path of Karmayoga, or  
selfless action, together with  
Devotion.
- 67-78   The glory of the *Gītā* described.
-







ॐ श्रीपरमात्मने नमः

# The Bhagavadgita

The Song Divine

## Chapter I

धृतराष्ट्र उवाच—

धर्मक्षेत्रे कुरुक्षेत्रे समवेता युयुत्सवः ।

मामकाः पाण्डवाश्चैव किमकुर्वत संजय ॥ १ ॥

Dhṛtarāṣṭra said:

Saṅjaya, assembled on the holy field  
of Kurukṣetra, eager to fight, what  
did my children and the children of  
Pāṇḍu do ? 1

## The Bhagavadgītā

संजय उवाच—

दृष्ट्वा तु पाण्डवानीकं व्यूढं दुर्योधनस्तदा ।

आचार्यमुपसङ्गम्य राजा वचनमब्रवीत् ॥ २ ॥

Saṁjaya said:

At that time, seeing the army of the Pāṇḍavas drawn up for battle and approaching Droṇāchārya, Prince Duryodhana spoke these words: 2

पश्यैतां पाण्डुपुत्राणामाचार्य महतीं चमूम् ।

व्यूढां द्रुपदपुत्रेण तव शिष्येण धीमता ॥ ३ ॥

“Behold, Master, the mighty army of the sons of Pāṇḍu arrayed for battle by your talented pupil, Dhṛṣṭadyumna, the son of Drupada. 3

अत्र शूरा महेष्वासा भीमार्जुनसमा युधि ।

युयुधानो विराटश्च द्रुपदश्च महारथः ॥ ४ ॥



## Chapter I

“There are in this army heroes wielding mighty bows and equal in military prowess to Bhīma and Arjuna, such as Sātyaki and Virāṭa, and the Mahārathī\* ( great car-warrior ) Drupada; 4

दृष्टकेतुश्चेकितानः काशिराजश्च वीर्यवान् ।

पुरुजित्कुन्तिभोजश्च शैब्यश्च नरपुङ्गवः ॥ ५ ॥

“Dhr̥ṣṭaketu, Chekitāna and the valiant King of Kāśi, and Purujit, Kuntibhoja, and Śaibya, the best of men; 5

---

\* A Rathī is a car-warrior who can fight a certain number of hostile combatants. A Mahārathī is capable of fighting ten thousand bowmen battling together. An Atirathī is a car-warrior still greater than a Mahārathī, who can fight any number of warriors.

## The Bhagavadgītā

युधामन्युश्च विक्रान्त उत्तमौजाश्च वीर्यवान् ।  
सौभद्रो द्रौपदेयाश्च सर्व एव महारथाः ॥ ६ ॥

“And mighty Yudhāmanyu, and valiant Uttamaujā, Abhimanyu, the son of Subhadra, and the five sons of Draupadī,—all of them Mahārathīs (great car-warriors ). 6

अस्माकं तु विशिष्टा ये तान्निबोध द्विजोत्तम ।  
नायका मम सैन्यस्य संज्ञार्थं तान् ब्रवीमि ते ॥ ७ ॥

“O best of Brahmins, know them also who are the principal warriors on our side, the generals of my army. For your information, I mention them below:—7

भवान् भीष्मश्च कर्णश्च कृपश्च समितिजयः ।  
अश्वत्थामा विकर्णश्च सौमदत्तिस्तथैव च ॥ ८ ॥

## Chapter I

“Yourself and Bhīṣma and Karna and  
Kṛpa, who is ever victorious in battle;  
and even so Aśwatthāmā, Vikarna, and  
Bhūriśravā, the son of Somadatta; 8

अन्ये च बहवः शूरा मदर्थे त्यक्तजीविताः ।

नानाशस्त्रप्रहरणाः सर्वे युद्धविशारदाः ॥ ९ ॥

“And many other heroes, equipped  
with various weapons and missiles, who  
have staked their lives for me, all skilled  
in warfare. 9

अपर्याप्तं तदस्माकं बलं भीष्माभिरक्षितम् ।

पर्याप्तं त्विदमेतेषां बलं भीमाभिरक्षितम् ॥ १० ॥

“This army of ours, fully protected  
By Bhīṣma, is unconquerable; while  
that army of theirs, guarded in every  
way by Bhīma, is easy to conquer. 10



## The Bhagavadgītā

अयनेषु च सर्वेषु यथाभागमवस्थिताः ।

भीष्ममेवाभिरक्षन्तु भवन्तः सर्व एव हि ॥ ११ ॥

“Therefore, stationed in your respective positions on all fronts, do you all guard Bhīṣma in particular on all sides.” 11

तस्य संजनयन् हर्षं कुस्वृद्धः पितामहः ।

सिंहनादं विनद्योच्चैः शङ्खं दध्मौ प्रतापवान् ॥ १२ ॥

The grand old man of the Kaurava race, their glorious granduncle Bhīṣma, cheering up Duryodhana, roared terribly like a lion and blew his conch. 12

ततः शङ्खाश्च भेर्यश्च पणवानकगोमुखाः ।

सहस्रैवाभ्यहन्यन्त स शब्दस्तुमुलोऽभवत् ॥ १३ ॥

Then conches, kettledrums, tabors, drums and trumpets suddenly blared forth and the noise was tumultuous. 13



## Chapter I

ततः श्वेतैर्हयैर्युक्ते महति स्यन्दने स्थितौ ।  
माधवः पाण्डवश्चैव दिव्यौ शङ्खौ प्रदध्मतुः ॥ १४ ॥

Then, seated in a glorious chariot drawn by white horses, Śrī Kṛṣṇa as well as Arjuna blew their celestial conches. 14

पाञ्चजन्यं हृषीकेशो देवदत्तं धनंजयः ।  
पौण्ड्रं दध्मौ महाशङ्खं भीमकर्मावृकोदरः ॥ १५ ॥

Śrī Kṛṣṇa blew His conch named Pāñchajanya; Arjuna, his conch called Devadatta; while Bhīma of terrible deeds blew his mighty conch Paundra. 15

अनन्तविजयं राजा कुन्तीपुत्रो युधिष्ठिरः ।  
नकुलः सहदेवश्च सुघोषमणिपुष्पकौ ॥ १६ ॥

King Yudhiṣṭhira, son of Kuntī, blew his conch Anantavijaya; while Nakula

## The Bhagavadgītā

and Sahadeva blew theirs, the Sughoṣa and Maṇipuṣpaka respectively. 16

काश्यश्च परमेष्वासः शिखण्डी च महारथः ।

धृष्टद्युम्नो विराटश्च सात्यकिश्चापराजितः ॥ १७ ॥

And the King of Kāśī, the excellent archer, and Śikhaṇḍī, the Mahārathī (great car-warrior), Dhṛṣṭadyumna and Virāṭa, and invincible Sātyaki did likewise. 17

द्रुपदो द्रौपदेयाश्च सर्वशः पृथिवीपते ।

सौभद्रश्च महाबाहुः शङ्खान्दध्मुः पृथक्पृथक् ॥ १८ ॥

O lord of the earth, Drupada as well as the five sons of Draupadī, and the mighty-armed Abhimanyu, son of Subhadra, all of them severally blew their respective conches. 18

स वोषो धार्तराष्ट्राणां हृदयानि व्यदारयत् ।

नभश्च पृथिवीं चैव तुमुलो व्यनुनादयन् ॥ १९ ॥

## Chapter I

And the terrible sound, echoing through heaven and the earth, rent the hearts of Dhṛtarāṣṭra's sons. 19

अथ व्यवस्थितान्दृष्ट्वा धार्तराष्ट्रान् कपिध्वजः।  
प्रवृत्ते शस्त्रसम्पाते धनुश्चम्य पाण्डवः ॥२०॥  
हृषीकेशं तदा वाक्यमिदमाह महीपते ।  
सेनयोरुभयोर्मध्ये रथं स्थापय मेऽच्युत ॥२१॥

Now, O lord of the earth, seeing your sons arrayed against him, and when missiles were ready to be hurled, Arjuna, son of Pāṇḍu, took up his bow and then addressed the following words to Śrī Kṛṣṇa: "Kṛṣṇa, place my chariot between the two armies. 20, 21

यावदेतान्निरीक्षेऽहं योद्धुकामानवस्थितान्।  
कैर्मया सह योद्धव्यमस्मिन् रणसमुद्यमे ॥२२॥



## The Bhagavadgītā

“And keep it there till I have carefully observed these warriors drawn up for battle, and have seen with whom I have to engage myself in this fight. 22

योत्स्यमानानवेक्षेऽहं य एतेऽत्र समागताः ।

धार्तराष्ट्रस्य दुर्बुद्धेर्युद्धे प्रियचिकीर्षवः ॥२३॥

“I shall scan the well-wishers in this war of evil-minded Duryodhana, who have assembled here and are ready for the fight.” 23

संजय उवाच—

एवमुक्तो हृषीकेशो गुडाकेशेन भारत ।

सेनयोरुभयोर्मध्ये स्थापयित्वा रथोत्तमम् ॥२४॥

भीष्मद्रोणप्रमुखतः सर्वेषां च महीक्षिताम् ।

उवाच पार्थ पश्यैतान् समवेतान् कुरुनिति ॥२५॥

Saṅjaya said:

O king, thus addressed by 'Arjuna, Śrī Kṛṣṇa placed the magnificent chariot



## Chapter I

between the two armies in front of Bhīṣma, Droṇa and all the kings, and said, "Arjuna, behold these Kauravas assembled here." 24, 25

तत्रापश्यत्स्थितान्पार्थः पितृनथ पितामहान् ।  
आचार्यान्मातुलान्भ्रातृन्पुत्रान्पौत्रान्सखींस्तथा । २६  
श्वशुरान् सुहृदश्चैव सेनयोरुभयोरपि ।  
तान्समीक्ष्य स कौन्तेयः सर्वान्बन्धूनवस्थितान् । २७ ।  
कृपया परयाविष्टो विषीदन्निदमब्रवीत् ।

अर्जुन उवाच—

दृष्ट्वेमं स्वजनं कृष्ण युयुत्सुं समुपस्थितम् ॥ २८ ॥  
सीदन्ति मम गात्राणि मुखं च परिशुष्यति ।  
वेपथुश्च शरीरे मे रोमहर्षश्च जायते ॥ २९ ॥

Now Arjuna saw stationed there in both the armies his uncles and granduncles, teachers, maternal uncles, brothers and cousins, sons and grandsons,

## The Bhagavadgītā

friends, fathers-in-law and well-wishers as well. Seeing all those relations present there, he was possessed by extreme compassion, and uttered these words in sadness.

Arjuna said:

Kṛṣṇa, at the sight of these kinsmen thus arrayed and longing for battle my limbs give way, and my mouth is parched; nay, my frame shakes and hair stands on end. 26-29

गाण्डीवं खंसते हस्तात्त्वक्चैव परिदह्यते ।

न च शक्नोम्यवस्थातुं भ्रमतीव च मे मनः ॥३०॥

The bow, Gāṇḍīva, drops from my hand and my skin burns all over: my mind is reeling, as it were, and I am not able even to stand. 30

*originally —  
home-country*

## Chapter I

*Persons of the  
same family  
relatives*

निमित्तानि च पश्यामि विपरीतानि केशव ।

न च श्रेयोऽनुपश्यामि हत्वा स्वजनमाहवे ॥३१॥

And, Keśava, I see the omens also  
inauspicious; nor do I see any good in  
killing my kith and kin in battle. 31

न काङ्क्षे विजयं कृष्ण न च राज्यं सुखानि च ।

किं नो राज्येन गोविन्द किं भोगैर्जीवितेन वा ॥३२॥

*To desire  
or wish  
for eagerly*  
Kṛṣṇa, I covet not victory, nor king-  
dom, nor pleasures. Govinda, of what  
use will kingdom, or luxuries, or even  
life be to us. 32

येषामर्थे काङ्क्षितं नो राज्यं भोगाः सुखानि च ।

त इमेऽवस्थिता युद्धे प्राणांस्त्यक्त्वा धनानि च ३३

आचार्याः पितरः पुत्रास्तथैव च पितामहाः ।

मातुलाः श्वशुराः पौत्राः श्यालाः सम्बन्धिनस्तथा ३४

Those for whose sake we covet the  
throne, luxuries and pleasures,—teachers,



## The Bhagavadgītā

uncles, sons and even so granduncles, maternal uncles, fathers-in-law, grandsons, brothers-in-law and other relations,—are here arrayed on the battle-field staking their lives and riches. 33, 34

एतान्न हन्तुमिच्छामि घ्नतोऽपि मधुसूदन ।

अपि त्रैलोक्यराज्यस्य हेतोः किं नु महीकृते ॥३५॥

Kṛṣṇa, I do not want to kill them, though they may kill me, even for the sovereignty of the three worlds; how, then, for this earth. 35

निहत्य धार्तराष्ट्रान्नः का प्रीतिः स्याज्जनार्दन ।

पापमेवाश्रयेदस्मान् हत्वैतानाततायिनः ॥३६॥

Kṛṣṇa, what joy can we derive through slaying the sons of Dhṛtarāṣṭra ?



## Chapter I

Sin alone will accrue to us as the result of killing these desperadoes. 56

तस्मान्नाहं वयं हन्तुं धार्तराष्ट्रान्स्वबान्धवान् ।

स्वजनं हि कथं हत्वा सुखिनः स्याम माधव ॥३७॥

Therefore, Kṛṣṇa, it does not behove us to kill our relations, the sons of Dhṛtarāṣṭra. For how shall we be happy after killing our own kinsmen? 37

यद्यप्येते न पश्यन्ति लोभोपहतचेतसः ।

कुलक्षयकृतं दोषं मित्रद्रोहे च पातकम् ॥३८॥

कथं न ज्ञेयमस्माभिः पापादस्मान्निवर्तितुम् ।

कुलक्षयकृतं दोषं प्रपश्यद्भिर्जनार्दन ॥३९॥

Although these people, with minds blinded by greed, do not perceive the evil of destruction of one's own race and the sin accruing from enmity towards

## The Bhagavadgītā

friends; why should not we, O Kṛṣṇa, who see clearly the sin involved in the destruction of one's family, think of turning away from this crime? 38, 39

कुलक्षये प्रणश्यन्ति कुलधर्माः सनातनाः ।

धर्मे नष्टे कुलं कृत्स्नमधर्मोऽभिभवत्युत ॥४०॥

Age-long family traditions disappear with the destruction of a family; and virtue having been lost, sin takes hold of the entire family. 40

अधर्माभिभवात्कृष्ण प्रदुष्यन्ति कुलस्त्रियः ।

स्त्रीषु दुष्टासु वाष्ण्येय जायते वर्णसंकरः ॥४१॥

With the preponderance of vice, Kṛṣṇa, the women of the family become corrupt; and with the corruption of women, O Vārṣṇeya ( descendant of Vṛṣṇi ), there ensues an intermixture of castes. 41

## Chapter I

संकरो नरकायैव कुलघ्नानां कुलस्य च ।

पतन्ति पितरो ह्येषां लुप्तपिण्डोदकक्रियाः ॥४२॥

Intermixture of castes leads the destroyers of the race as well as the race itself to hell. Deprived of the offerings of lumps of rice and water (Śrāddha, Tarpaṇa, etc. ), the manes of their race also fall. 42

दोषैरेतैः कुलघ्नानां वर्णसंकरकारकैः ।

उत्साद्यन्ते जातिधर्माः कुलधर्माश्च शाश्वताः ॥४३॥

Through these evils bringing about an intermixture of castes, the age-long caste-traditions and family-customs of the destroyers of the race get extinct. 43

उत्सन्नकुलधर्माणां मनुष्याणां जनार्दन ।

नरकेऽनियतं वासो भवतीत्यनुशुश्रुम ॥४४॥



## The Bhagavadgītā

Kṛṣṇa, we hear that men who have lost their family-traditions dwell in hell for an indefinite period of time. 44

अहो बत महत्पापं कर्तुं व्यवसिता वयम् ।

यद्राज्यसुखलोभेन हन्तुं स्वजनमुद्यताः ॥४५॥

Alas ! Though possessed of intelligence we have set our mind on the commission of a great sin in that due to lust for throne and enjoyment we are intent on killing our own kinsmen. 45

यदि मामप्रतीकारमशस्त्रं शस्त्रपाणयः ।

धार्तराष्ट्रा रणे हन्युस्तन्मे क्षेमतरं भवेत् ॥४६॥

It would be better for me if the sons of Dhṛtarāṣṭra, armed with weapons, killed me in battle while I was unarmed and unresisting. 46



## Chapter I

संजय उवाच—

एवमुक्त्वार्जुनः संख्ये रथोपस्थ उपाविशत् ।

विसृज्य सशरं चापं शोकसंविग्नमानसः ॥४७॥

Sañjaya said:

Arjuna, with his mind agitated by grief on the battle-field, having spoken thus, and having laid down his bow and arrows, sank into the hinder part of his chariot. ५ 47

ॐ तत्सदिति श्रीमद्भगवद्गीतासूपनिषत्सु ब्रह्मविद्यायां

योगशास्त्रे श्रीकृष्णार्जुनसंवादेऽर्जुनविषाद-

योगो नाम प्रथमोऽध्यायः ॥ १ ॥

Thus, in the Upaniṣad sung by the Lord, the science of Brahma, the scripture on Yoga, the dialogue between Śrī Kṛṣṇa and Arjuna, ends the first chapter entitled "The Yoga of Dejection of Arjuna."

To pass  
to a lower  
level or state

To be with  
drawn  
To sit  
slope away

## Chapter II

संजय उवाच—

तं तथा कृपयाविष्टमश्रुपूर्णाकुलेक्षणम् ।  
विषीदन्तमिदं वाक्यमुवाच मधुसूदनः ॥ १ ॥

Saṁjaya said:

Śrī Kṛṣṇa then addressed the following words to Arjuna, who was overwhelmed with pity, whose eyes were

## Chapter II

filled with tears and agitated, and who was full of sorrow. 1

श्रीभगवानुवाच—

कुतस्त्वा कश्मलमिदं विषमे समुपस्थितम् ।

अनार्यजुष्टमस्वर्ग्यमकीर्तिकरमर्जुन ॥ २ ॥

Śrī Bhagavān said:

Arjuna, how has this infatuation overtaken you at this odd hour ? It is shunned by noble souls; neither will it bring heaven, nor fame to you. 2

क्लैब्यं मा स्म गमः पार्थ नैतत्स्वय्युपपद्यते ।

क्षुद्रं हृदयदौर्बल्यं त्यक्त्वोत्तिष्ठ परंतप ॥ ३ ॥

Yield not to unmanliness, Arjuna; ill does it become you. Shaking off this paltry faint-heartedness arise, O scorcher of your enemies. 3

## The Bhagavadgītā

अर्जुन उवाच—

कथं भीष्ममहं संख्ये द्रोणं च मधुसूदन ।

दृष्टुभिः प्रति योत्स्यामि पूजार्हावरिसूदन ॥ ४ ॥

Arjuna said:

How, Kṛṣṇa, shall I fight Bhiṣma and  
Droṇa with arrows on the battle-field ?  
They are both objects of reverence, O  
destroyer of foes. 4

गुरुनहत्वा हि महानुभावान्

श्रेयो भोक्तुं भैक्ष्यमपीह लोके ।

हत्वार्थकामांस्तु गुरुनिहैव

भुञ्जीय भोगान् रुधिरप्रदिग्धान् ॥ ५ ॥

It is better to live on alms in this  
world without slaying these noble elders,  
because even after killing them we shall



## Chapter II

enjoy only blood-stained pleasures in the form of wealth and sense-enjoyments. 5

न चैतद्विद्मः कतरन्नो गरीयो

यद्वा जयेम यदि वा नो जयेयुः ।

यानेव हत्वा न जिजीविषाम-

स्तेऽवस्थिताः प्रमुखे धार्तराष्ट्राः ॥ ६ ॥

We do not know which is preferable for us—to fight or not to fight; nor do we know whether we shall win or whether they will conquer us. The sons of Dhṛtarāṣṭra, by killing whom we do not even wish to live, are arrayed against us. 6

कार्पण्यदोषोपहतस्वभावः

पृच्छामि त्वां धर्मसंमूढचेताः ।

यच्छ्रेयः स्यान्निश्चितं ब्रूहि तन्मे

शिष्यस्तेऽहं शाधि मां त्वां प्रपन्नम् ॥ ७ ॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

With my very being tainted by the vice of faint-heartedness and my mind puzzled with regard to duty, I am asking You. Tell me that which is decidedly good; I am Your disciple. Pray instruct me, who have sought refuge in You. 7

न हि प्रपश्यामि ममापनुद्याद्

यच्छोकमुच्छोषणमिन्द्रियाणाम् ।

अवाप्य

भूमावसपत्नमृद्धं

राज्यं सुराणामपि चाधिपत्यम् ॥ ८ ॥

For even on obtaining undisputed sovereignty and an affluent kingdom on this earth and lordship over the gods. I do not see any means that can drive away the grief which is drying up my senses. 8

संजय उवाच—

एवमुक्त्वा हृषीकेशं गुडाकेशः परंतप ।

न योत्स्य इति गोविन्दमुक्त्वा तूष्णीं बभूव ह ॥ ९ ॥

## Chapter II

Saṅjaya said:

O king, having thus spoken to Śrī Kṛṣṇa, Arjuna, again said to Him, "I will not fight," and became silent. 9

तमुवाच हृषीकेशः प्रहसन्निव भारत ।

सेनयोरुभयोर्मध्ये विषीदन्तमिदं वचः ॥१०॥

Then, O Dhṛtarāṣṭra, Śrī Kṛṣṇa, as if smiling, addressed the following words to sorrowing Arjuna, in the midst of the two armies. 10

श्रीभगवानुवाच —

अशोच्यानन्वशोचस्त्वं प्रज्ञावादांश्च भाषसे ।

गतासूनगतासूंश्च नानुशोचन्ति पण्डिताः ॥११॥

Śrī Bhagavān said:

Arjuna, you grieve over those who should not be grieved for, and yet speak

## The Bhagavadgītā

like the learned; wise men do not sorrow  
over the dead or the living. 11

न त्वेवाहं जातु नासं न त्वं नेमे जनाधिपाः ।  
न चैव न भविष्यामः सर्वे वयमतः परम् ॥ १२ ॥

In fact, there was never a time when  
I was not, or when you or these kings  
were not. Nor is it a fact that hereafter  
we shall all cease to be. 12

देहिनोऽस्मिन् यथा देहे कौमारं यौवनं जरा ।  
तथा देहान्तरप्राप्तिर्धीरस्तत्र न मुह्यति ॥ १३ ॥

Just as boyhood, youth and old age  
are attributed to the soul through this  
body, even so it attains another body.  
The wise man does not get deluded  
about this. 13



## Chapter II

मात्रास्पर्शास्तु कौन्तेय शीतोष्णसुखदुःखदाः।

आगमापायिनोऽनित्यास्तांस्तितिक्षस्व भारत ॥ १४ ॥

O son of Kuntī, the contacts between the senses and their objects, which give rise to the feelings of heat and cold, pleasure and pain, etc., are transitory and fleeting; therefore, Arjuna, ignore them. 14

यं हि न व्यथयन्त्येते पुरुषं पुरुषर्षभ ।

समदुःखसुखं धीरं सोऽमृतत्वाय कल्पते ॥ १५ ॥

Arjuna, the wise man to whom pain and pleasure are alike, and who is not tormented by these contacts, becomes eligible for immortality. 15

नासतो विद्यते भावो नाभावो विद्यते सतः ।

उभयोरपि दृष्टोऽन्तस्त्वनयोस्तत्त्वदर्शिभिः ॥ १६ ॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

The unreal has no existence; and the real never ceases to be; the reality of both has thus been perceived by the seers of truth. 16

अविनाशि तु तद्विद्धि येन सर्वमिदं ततम् ।  
विनाशमव्ययस्यास्य न कश्चित्कर्तुमर्हति ॥१७॥

Know that to be imperishable, by which all this is pervaded; for none can bring about the destruction of this indestructible substance. 17

अन्तवन्त इमे देहा नित्यस्योक्ताः शरीरिणः ।  
अनाशिनोऽप्रमेयस्य तस्माद्युध्यस्व भारत ॥१८॥

All these bodies pertaining to the imperishable, indefinable and eternal soul are spoken of as perishable; therefore, Arjuna, fight. 18

## Chapter II

य एनं वेत्ति हन्तारं यश्चैनं मन्यते हतम् ।

उभौ तौ न विजानीतो नायं हन्ति न हन्यते ॥ १९ ॥

They are both ignorant, he who knows the soul to be capable of killing and he who takes it as killed; for verily the soul neither kills, nor is killed. 19

न जायते म्रियते वा कदाचि-

न्नायं भूत्वा भविता वा न भूयः ।

अजो नित्यः शाश्वतोऽयं पुराणो

न हन्यते हन्यमाने शरीरे ॥ २० ॥

The soul is never born nor dies; nor does it exist on coming into being. For it is unborn, eternal, everlasting and primeval; even though the body is slain, the soul is not. 20

## The Bhagavadgītā

वेदाविनाशिनं नित्यं य एनमजमव्ययम् ।

कथं स पुरुषः पार्थ कं घातयति हन्ति कम् ॥ २१ ॥

Arjuna, how will the man who knows this soul to be imperishable, eternal and free from birth and decay, cause anyone to be killed, or kill anyone ? 21

वासांसि जीर्णानि यथा विहाय

नवानि गृह्णाति नरोऽपराणि ।

तथा शरीराणि विहाय जीर्णा-

न्यन्यानि संयाति नवानि देही ॥ २२ ॥

As a man discarding worn-out clothes, takes other new ones, likewise the embodied soul, casting off worn-out bodies, enters into others which are new. 22

नैनं छिन्दन्ति शस्त्राणि नैनं दहति पावकः ।

न चैनं क्लेदयन्त्यापो न शोषयति मारुतः ॥ २३ ॥



## Chapter II

Weapons cannot cut it nor can fire burn it; water cannot drench it nor can wind make it dry. 23

अच्छेद्योऽयमदाह्योऽयमक्लेद्योऽशोष्य एव च ।

नित्यः सर्वगतः स्थाणुरचलोऽयं सनातनः ॥ २४ ॥

For this soul is incapable of being cut; it is proof against fire, impervious to water and undriable as well. This soul is eternal, omnipresent, immovable, constant and everlasting. 24

अव्यक्तोऽयमचिन्त्योऽयमविकार्योऽयमुच्यते ।

तस्मादेवं विदित्वैनं नानुशोचितुमर्हसि ॥ २५ ॥

This soul is unmanifest; it is unthinkable; and it is spoken of as immutable. Therefore, knowing this as such, you should not grieve. 25

## The Bhagavadgītā

अथ चैनं नित्यजातं नित्यं वा मन्यसे मृतम् ।  
तथापि त्वं महाबाहो नैवं शोचितुमर्हसि ॥२६॥

And, Arjuna, even if you regard this soul as constantly taking birth, and constantly dying, you should not grieve like this. 26

जातस्य हि ध्रुवो मृत्युर्ध्रुवं जन्म मृतस्य च ।  
तस्मादपरिहार्येऽर्थे न त्वं शोचितुमर्हसि ॥२७॥

For in that case the death of him who is born is certain; and the rebirth of him who is dead is inevitable. It does not, therefore, behove you to grieve over an inevitable event. 27

अव्यक्तादीनि भूतानि व्यक्तमध्यानि भारत ।  
अव्यक्तनिधनान्येव तत्र का परिदेवना ॥२८॥

## Chapter II

Arjuna, all beings were unmanifest before they were born, and will become unmanifest again when they are dead; they are manifest only in the intermediate stage. What occasion, then, for lamentation ? 28

आश्चर्यवत्पश्यति कश्चिदेन-

माश्चर्यवद्ब्रूदति तथैव चान्यः ।

आश्चर्यवच्चैनमन्यः शृणोति

श्रुत्वाप्येनं वेद न चैव कश्चित् ॥२९॥

Hardly anyone perceives this soul as marvellous, scarce another likewise speaks thereof as marvellous, and scarce another hears of it as marvellous; while there are some who know it not even on hearing of it. 29

देही नित्यमवध्योऽयं देहे सर्वस्य भारत ।

तस्मात्सर्वाणि भूतानि न त्वं शोचितुमर्हसि ॥३०॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

Arjuna, this soul residing in the bodies of all can never be slain; therefore, it does not behove you to grieve for any being. 30

स्वधर्ममपि चावेक्ष्य न विकम्पितुमर्हसि ।

धर्म्याद्धि युद्धाच्छ्रेयोऽन्यत्क्षत्रियस्य न विद्यते ॥३१॥

Besides, considering your own duty you should not waver; for there is nothing more welcome for a man of the warrior class than a righteous war. 31

यदृच्छया चोपपन्नं स्वर्गद्वारमपावृतम् ।

सुखिनः क्षत्रियाः पार्थ लभन्ते युद्धमीदृशम् ॥३२॥

Arjuna, it is only the lucky among the Kṣatriyas, who gets such an unsolicited opportunity for war, which is an open door to heaven. 32



## Chapter II

अथ चेत्स्वमिमं धर्म्यं संग्रामं न करिष्यसि ।

ततः स्वधर्मं कीर्तिं च हित्वा पापमवाप्स्यसि ॥ ३३ ॥

Now, if you will not wage such a righteous war, then, abandoning your duty and losing your reputation, you will incur sin. 33

अकीर्तिं चापि भूतानि कथयिष्यन्ति तेऽव्ययाम् ।

संभावितस्य चाकीर्तिर्मरणादतिरिच्यते ॥ ३४ ॥

Nay, people will pour undying infamy on you, and infamy brought on a man enjoying popular esteem is worse than death. 34

भथाद्रणादुपरतं मंस्यन्ते त्वां महारथाः ।

येषां च त्वं बहुमतो भूत्वा यास्यसि लाघवम् ॥ ३५ ॥

And the great car-warriors, who held you in high esteem, will now make light

## The Bhagavadgītā

of you, thinking that you have desisted  
from battle out of fear. 35

अवाच्यवादांश्च बहून् वदिष्यन्ति तवाहिताः ।

निन्दन्तस्तव सामर्थ्यं ततो दुःखतरं नु किम् ॥ ३६ ॥

And your enemies, disparaging your  
might, will speak many unbecoming  
words; what can be more distressing  
than this ? 36

हतो वा प्राप्स्यसि स्वर्गं जित्वा वा भोक्ष्यसे महीम् ।

तस्मादुत्तिष्ठ कौन्तेय युद्धाय कृतनिश्चयः ॥ ३७ ॥

Either slain in battle you will attain  
heaven, or gaining victory you will enjoy  
sovereignty of the earth; therefore, arise,  
Arjuna, determined to fight. 37

सुखदुःखे समे कृत्वा लाभालाभौ जयाजयौ ।

ततो युद्धाय युज्यस्व नैवं पापमवाप्स्यसि ॥ ३८ ॥

## Chapter II

Treating alike pleasure and pain, gain and loss, victory and defeat, get ready for the fight, then; fighting thus you will not incur sin. 38

एषा तेऽभिहिता सांख्ये बुद्धिर्योगे त्विमां शृणु ।  
बुद्ध्या युक्तो यया पार्थ कर्मबन्धं प्रहास्यसि ॥ ३९ ॥

Arjuna, this attitude of mind has been presented to you from the point of view of Jñānayoga; now hear the same as presented from the point of view of Karmayoga (the Yoga of selfless action). Equipped with this attitude of mind, you will be able to shake off completely the shackles of Karma. 39

नेहाभिक्रमनाशोऽस्ति प्रत्यवायो न विद्यते ।  
स्वल्पमप्यस्य धर्मस्य त्रायते महतो भयात् ॥ ४० ॥



## The Bhagavadgītā

In this path ( of disinterested action ) there is no loss of effort, nor is there fear of contrary result. Even a little practice of this discipline protects one from great fear ( of birth and death ). 40

व्यवसायात्मिका बुद्धिरेकेह कुरुनन्दन ।

बहुशाखा ह्यनन्ताश्च बुद्धयोऽव्यवसायिनाम् ॥४१॥

Arjuna, in this blessed path the intellect is determinate and one-pointed; whereas the intellect of the undecided ( ignorant men moved by desires ) is scattered in many directions and endlessly diverse. 41

यामिमां पुष्पितां वाचं प्रवदन्त्यविपश्चितः ।

वेदवादरताः पार्थ नान्यदस्तीति वादिनः ॥४२॥

कामात्मानः स्वर्गपरा जन्मकर्मफलप्रदाम् ।

क्रियाविशेषबहुलां भोगैश्वर्यगतिं प्रति ॥४३॥



## Chapter II

भोगैश्वर्यप्रसक्तानां तयापहतचेतसाम् ।

व्यवसायात्मिका बुद्धिः समाधौ न विधीयते ॥४४॥

Arjuna, those who are obsessed by desire and devoted to the latter of the Vedas, who look upon heaven as the supreme goal and argue that there is nothing beyond heaven, are unwise. They utter flowery speech recommending many acts of various kinds for the attainment of pleasure and prosperity with rebirth as their fruit. Those whose minds are carried away by such words, and who are deeply attached to pleasure and worldly prosperity, cannot attain the determinate intellect concentrated on God. 42. 43, 44

त्रैगुण्यविषया वेदा निस्त्रैगुण्यो भवार्जुन ।

निर्द्वन्द्वो नित्यसत्त्वस्थो निर्योगक्षेम आत्मवान् ॥४५॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

Arjuna, the Vedas thus deal with the three Guṇas, or modes of Prakṛti, and their evolutes in the form of worldly enjoyments as well as the means of attaining such enjoyments; be thou indifferent to these enjoyments and their means, rising above pairs of opposites like pleasure and pain, etc., established in the Eternal Existence (God), absolutely unconcerned about the supply of wants and the preservation of what has been already attained, and with the mind completely under control. 45

यावानर्थं उदपाने सर्वतः संप्लुतोदके ।

तावान् सर्वेषु वेदेषु ब्राह्मणस्य विजानतः ॥ ४६ ॥

A Brahman, who has obtained enlightenment, has the same use for all the Vedas as one has for a small reservoir of

## Chapter II

water in a place flooded with water on all sides. 46

कर्मण्येवाधिकारस्ते मा फलेषु कदाचन ।

मा कर्मफलहेतुर्भूर्मा ते सङ्गोऽस्त्वकर्मणि ॥४७॥

Your right is to work only, but never to the fruit thereof. Let not the fruit of action be your object, nor let your attachment be to inaction. 47

योगस्थः कुरु कर्माणि सङ्गं त्यक्त्वा धनंजय ।

सिद्ध्यसिद्ध्योः समो भूत्वा समत्वं योग उच्यते ४८

Arjuna, perform your duties dwelling in Yoga, relinquishing attachment, and indifferent to success and failure; equanimity is called Yoga. 48

दूरेण ह्यवरं कर्म बुद्धियोगाद्धनंजय ।

बुद्धौ शरणमन्विच्छ कृपणाः फलहेतवः ॥४९॥



## The Bhagavadgītā

Action ( with a selfish motive ) is far inferior to this Yoga in the form of equanimity. Do you seek refuge in this evenness of mind, Arjuna; for poor and wretched are those who crave for fruit ( of action ). 49

बुद्धियुक्तो जहातीह उभे सुकृतदुष्कृते ।

तस्माद्योगाय युज्यस्व योगः कर्मसु कौशलम् ॥ ५० ॥

Endowed with equanimity, one sheds in this life both good and evil. Therefore, exert yourself, for this Yoga of equanimity. Skill in action lies in ( the practice of this ) Yoga. 50

कर्मजं बुद्धियुक्ता हि फलं त्यक्त्वा मनीषिणः ।

जन्मबन्धविनिर्मुक्ताः पदं गच्छन्त्यनामयम् ॥ ५१ ॥

For wise men endowed with equanimity, renouncing the fruit of actions and



## Chapter II

freed from the shackles of birth, attain the blissful supreme state. 51

यदा ते मोहकलिलं बुद्धिर्व्यतितरिष्यति ।

तदा गन्तासि निर्वेदं श्रोतव्यस्य श्रुतस्य च ॥५२॥

When your mind will cross the mire of delusion, you will then grow indifferent to what had been heard and what is yet to be heard about this world and the next. 52

श्रुतिविप्रतिपन्ना ते यदा स्थास्यति निश्चला ।

समाधावचला बुद्धिस्तदा योगमवाप्स्यसि ॥५३॥

When your mind, confused by hearing conflicting statements, will remain steadfast and firm in meditation ( on God ), you will then attain union with God. 53

अर्जुन उवाच—

स्थितप्रज्ञस्य का भाषा समाधिस्थस्य केशव ।

स्थितधीः किं प्रभाषेत किमासीत ब्रजेत किम् ।५४।

## The Bhagavadgītā

Arjuna said:

Kṛṣṇa, what is the mark of a God-realized soul, stable of mind and established in Samādhi ( perfect tranquillity of mind ) ? How does the man of stable mind speak, how he sits, how walks ? 54

श्रीभगवानुवाच—

प्रजहाति यदा कामान् सर्वान् पार्थ मनोगतान् ।

आत्मन्येवात्मना तुष्टः स्थितप्रज्ञस्तदोच्यते ॥५५॥

Śrī Bhagavān said:

Arjuna, when one thoroughly abandons all cravings of the mind, and is satisfied in the self through ( the joy of ) the self, then he is called stable of mind. 55

दुःखेष्वनुद्विग्नमनाः सुखेषु विगतस्पृहः ।

वीतरागभयक्रोधः स्थितधीर्मुनिरुच्यते ॥५६॥

The sage, whose mind remains unperturbed in sorrows, whose thirst for

## Chapter II

pleasures has altogether disappeared, and who is free from passion, fear and anger, is called stable of mind. 56

यः सर्वत्रानभिस्नेहस्तत्तत्प्राप्य शुभाशुभम् ।

नाभिनन्दति न द्वेष्टि तस्य प्रज्ञा प्रतिष्ठिता ॥५७॥

He who is unattached to everything and meeting with good and evil, neither rejoices nor recoils, his mind is stable. 57

यदा संहरते चायं कूर्मोऽङ्गानीव सर्वशः ।

इन्द्रियाणीन्द्रियार्थेभ्यस्तस्य प्रज्ञा प्रतिष्ठिता ॥५८॥

When like a tortoise, which draws in its limbs from all directions, he withdraws his senses from the sense-objects, his mind has become stable. 58

विषया विनिवर्तन्ते निराहारस्य देहिनः ।

रसवजं रसोऽप्यस्य परं दृष्ट्वा निवर्तते ॥५९॥

Sense-objects cease for him, who does not enjoy them with his senses; but the



## The Bhagavadgītā

taste for them persists. This relish also disappears in the case of the man of stable mind when he sees the Supreme. 59

यततो ह्यपि कौन्तेय पुरुषस्य विपश्चितः ।

इन्द्रियाणि प्रमाथीनि हरन्ति प्रसभं मनः ॥६०॥

Turbulent by nature, the senses even of a wise man, who is practising self-control, forcibly carry away his mind, Arjuna. 60

तानि सर्वाणि संयम्य युक्त आसीत मत्परः ।

वशे हि यस्येन्द्रियाणि तस्य प्रज्ञा प्रतिष्ठिता ॥६१॥

Therefore having controlled them all and collecting his mind, one should sit for meditation, devoting oneself heart and soul to Me. For he whose senses are mastered, his mind has become stable. 61



## Chapter II

ध्यायतो विषयान् पुंसः सङ्गस्तेषूपजायते ।

सङ्गात्संजायते कामः कामात्क्रोधोऽभिजायते । ६२।

The man dwelling on sense-objects develops attachment for them; from attachment springs up desire, and from desire ( unfulfilled ) ensues anger. 62

क्रोधान्नवति संमोहः संमोहात्स्मृतिविभ्रमः ।

स्मृतिभ्रंशाद् बुद्धिनाशो बुद्धिनाशात्प्रणश्यति । ६३॥

From anger arises infatuation: from infatuation, confusion of memory; from confusion of memory, loss of reason; and from loss of reason one goes to complete ruin. 63

रागद्वेषवियुक्तैस्तु विषयानिन्द्रियैश्चरन् ।

आत्मवश्यैर्विधेयात्मा प्रसादमधिगच्छति ॥ ६४॥

But the self-controlled practicant, while enjoying the various sense-objects

## The Bhagavadgītā

through his senses, which are disciplined and free from likes and dislikes, attains placidity of mind. 64

प्रसादे सर्वदुःखानां हानिरस्योपजायते ।

प्रसन्नचेतसो ह्याशु बुद्धिः पर्यवतिष्ठते ॥६५॥

With the attainment of such placidity of mind, all his sorrows come to an end; and the intellect of such a person of tranquil mind, soon withdrawing itself from all sides, becomes firmly established in God. 65

नास्ति बुद्धिरयुक्तस्य न चायुक्तस्य भावना ।

न चाभावयतः शान्तिरशान्तस्य कुतः सुखम् ॥६६॥

He who has not controlled his mind and senses can have no determinate reason; nor can such an undisciplined man have belief ( in God ). The unbelieving man

## Chapter II

can have no peace; and how can there be happiness for one lacking peace of mind? 66

इन्द्रियाणां हि चरतां यन्मनोऽनुविधीयते ।

तदस्य हरति प्रज्ञां वायुर्नावमिवाम्भसि ॥६७॥

As the wind carries away a barge upon the waters, even so of the wandering senses, the one to which the mind is joined takes away his discrimination. 67

तस्माद्यस्य महाबाहो निगृहीतानि सर्वशः ।

इन्द्रियाणीन्द्रियार्थेभ्यस्तस्य प्रज्ञा प्रतिष्ठिता ॥६८॥

Therefore, Arjuna, he whose senses are completely restrained from their objects, his mind is stable. 68

या निशा सर्वभूतानां तस्यां जागर्ति संयमी ।

यस्यां जाग्रति भूतानि सा निशा पश्यतो मुनेः ।६९॥

That which is night to all beings, in that state (of Divine Knowledge and

## The Bhagavadgītā

Supreme Bliss ) the God-realized Yogi keeps awake. And that (the ever-changing, transient worldly happiness) in which all beings keep awake is night to the seer. 69

आपूर्यमाणमचलप्रतिष्ठं

समुद्रमापः प्रविशन्ति यद्वत् ।

तद्वत्कामा यं प्रविशन्ति सर्वे

स शान्तिमाप्नोति न कामकामी ॥७०॥

As the waters ( of different rivers ) enter the ocean, which though full on all sides remains undisturbed, likewise he, in whom all enjoyments merge themselves, attains peace; not he, who hankers after such enjoyments. 70

विहाय कामान् यः सर्वान् पुमांश्चरति निःस्पृहः ।

निर्ममो निरहंकारः स शान्तिमधिगच्छति ॥७१॥



## Chapter II

He, who gives up all desires and moves free from attachment, egoism and thirst for enjoyment, attains peace. 71

एषा ब्राह्मी स्थितिः पार्थ नैनां प्राप्य विमुह्यति ।

स्थित्वास्यामन्तकालेऽपि ब्रह्मनिर्वाणमृच्छति । ७२ ।

Arjuna, such is the state of the God-realized soul; having reached this state, he overcomes delusion. And established in this state, even at the last moment, he attains Brahmic Bliss. 72

ॐ तत्सदिति श्रीमद्भगवद्गीतासूपनिषत्सु ब्रह्मविद्यायां  
योगशास्त्रे श्रीकृष्णार्जुनसंवादे सांख्ययोगो  
नाम द्वितीयोऽध्यायः ॥ २ ॥

Thus, in the Upaniṣad sung by the Lord, the science of Brahma, the scripture on Yoga, the dialogue between Śrī Kṛṣṇa and Arjuna, ends the second chapter entitled "Sāṅkhyayoga" ( the Yoga of Knowledge ).

### Chapter III

अर्जुन उवाच—

ज्यायसी चेत्कर्मणस्ते मता बुद्धिर्जनार्दन ।

तत्किं कर्मणि घोरे मां नियोजयसि केशव ॥ १ ॥

Arjuna asid:

Kṛṣṇa, if you consider Knowledge as superior to Action, why then do You urge me to this dreadful action, Keśava ? 1

## Chapter III

व्यामिश्रेणेव वाक्येन बुद्धिं मोहयसीव मे ।

तदेकं वद निश्चित्य येन श्रेयोऽहमाप्नुयाम् ॥ २ ॥

You are, as it were, puzzling my mind by these seemingly involved expressions; therefore, tell me definitely the one discipline by which I may obtain the highest good. 2

श्रीभगवानुवाच—

लोकेऽस्मिन्द्विविधा निष्ठा पुरा प्रोक्ता मया नव ।

ज्ञानयोगेन सांख्यानं कर्मयोगेन योगिनाम् ॥ ३ ॥

Sri Bhagavān said:

Arjuna, in this world two courses of Sādhana (spiritual discipline) have been enunciated by Me in the past. In the case of the Sāṅkhyayogī, the Sādhana

## The Bhagavadgītā

proceeds along the path of Knowledge, whereas in the case of the Karmayogī, it proceeds along the path of Action. 3

न कर्मणामनारम्भान्नैष्कर्म्यं पुरुषोऽश्नुते ।

न च संन्यसनादेव सिद्धिं समधिगच्छति ॥ ४ ॥

Man does not attain freedom from action ( culmination of the path of Action ) without entering upon action: nor does he reach perfection ( culmination of the path of Knowledge ) merely by renunciation of action. 4

न हि कश्चित्क्षणमपि जातु तिष्ठत्यकर्मकृत् ।

कार्यते ह्यवशः कर्म सर्वः प्रकृतिजैर्गुणैः ॥ ५ ॥

Surely none can remain inactive even for a moment; everyone is helplessly driven to action by nature-born qualities.5



### Chapter III

कर्मेन्द्रियाणि संयम्य य आस्ते मनसा स्मरन् ।

इन्द्रियार्थान्विमूढात्मा मिथ्याचारः स उच्यते । ६ ।

He who outwardly restraining the organs of sense and action, sits mentally dwelling on objects of senses, that man of deluded intellect is called a hypocrite. 6

यस्त्विन्द्रियाणि मनसा नियम्यारभतेऽर्जुन ।

कर्मेन्द्रियैः कर्मयोगमसक्तः स विशिष्यते ॥ ७ ॥

On the other hand, he who controlling the organs of sense and action by the mind, and remaining unattached, undertakes the Yoga of Action through those organs, Arjuna, he excels. 7

नियतं कुरु कर्म त्वं कर्म ज्यायो ह्यकर्मणः ।

शरीरयात्रापि च ते न प्रसिद्ध्येदकर्मणः ॥ ८ ॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

Therefore, do you perform your allotted duty; for action is superior to inaction. Desisting from action, you cannot even maintain your body. 8

यज्ञार्थात्कर्मणोऽन्यत्र लोकोऽयं कर्मबन्धनः ।

तदर्थं कर्म कौन्तेय मुक्तसङ्गः समाचर ॥ ९ ॥

Man is bound by shackles of Karma only when engaged in actions other than work performed for the sake of sacrifice. Therefore, Arjuna, do you efficiently perform your duty, free from attachment, for the sake of sacrifice alone. 9

सहयज्ञाः प्रजाः सृष्ट्वा पुरोवाच प्रजापतिः ।

अनेन प्रसविष्यध्वमेष वोऽस्त्विष्टकामधुक् ॥ १० ॥

Having created mankind alone with the spirit of sacrifice at the beginning of

### Chapter III

creation, the Creator, Brahmā, said to them, "Do you multiply through this; may this yield the enjoyment you seek.<sup>10</sup>

देवान् भावयतानेन ते देवा भावयन्तु वः ।

परस्परं भावयन्तः श्रेयः परमवाप्स्यथ ॥११॥

"Foster the gods through this (sacrifice); and let the gods foster you. Thus fostering one another disinterestedly, you will attain the highest good. 11

इष्टान्भोगान्हि वो देवा दास्यन्ते यज्ञभाविताः ।

तैर्दत्तानप्रदायैभ्यो यो भुङ्क्ते स्तेन एव सः ॥१२॥

"Fostered by sacrifice, the gods will surely bestow on you unasked all the desired enjoyments. He, who enjoys the gifts bestowed by them, without giving them in return, is undoubtedly a thief."<sup>12</sup>

## The Bhagavadgītā

यज्ञशिष्टाशिनः सन्तो मुच्यन्ते सर्वकिल्बिषैः ।

भुञ्जते ते त्वघं पापा ये पचन्त्यात्मकारणात् ॥ १३ ॥

The virtuous, who partake of what is left after sacrifice, are absolved of all sins. Those sinful ones, who cook for the sake of nourishing their body alone, eat only sin. 13

अन्नाद्भवन्ति भूतानि पर्जन्यादन्नसंभवः ।

यज्ञाद्भवति पर्जन्यो यज्ञः कर्मसमुद्भवः ॥ १४ ॥

कर्म ब्रह्मोद्भवं विद्धि ब्रह्माक्षरसमुद्भवम् ।

तस्मात्सर्वगतं ब्रह्म नित्यं यज्ञे प्रतिष्ठितम् ॥ १५ ॥

All beings are evolved from food; production of food is dependent on rain; rain ensues from sacrifice, and sacrifice is rooted in action. Know that action has its origin in the Vedas, and the Vedas



### Chapter III

proceed from the indestructible ( God );  
hence, the all-pervading infinite is  
always present in sacrifice. 14, 15

एवं प्रवर्तितं चक्रं नानुवर्तयतीह यः ।

अघायुरिन्द्रियारामौ मोघं पार्थ स जीवति ॥ १६ ॥

Arjuna, he who does not follow the  
wheel of creation thus set going in this  
world ( i. e., does not perform his duties ),  
sinful and sensual, he lives in vain. 16

यस्त्वात्मरतिरेव स्यादात्मतृप्तश्च मानवः ।

आत्मन्येव च संतुष्टस्तस्य कार्यं न विद्यते ॥ १७ ॥

He, however, who takes delight in the  
Self alone and is gratified with the Self,  
and is contented in the Self, has no duty. 17

नैव तस्य कृतेनार्थो नाकृतेनेह कश्चन ।

न चास्य सर्वभूतेषु कश्चिदर्थन्यपाश्रयः ॥ १८ ॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

In this world that great soul has no use whatsoever for things done, nor for things not done; nor has he selfish dependence of any kind on any creature.

18

तस्मादसक्तः सततं कार्यं कर्म समाचर ।

असक्तो ह्याचरन् कर्म परमाप्नोति पूरुषः ॥१९॥

Therefore, always efficiently do your duty without attachment. Doing work without attachment, man attains the Supreme.

19

कर्मणैव हि संसिद्धिमास्थिता जनकादयः ।

लोकसंग्रहमेवापि संपश्यन् कर्तुमर्हसि ॥२०॥

It is through action (without attachment) alone that Janaka and other wise men reached perfection. Having an eye

### Chapter III

to the maintenance of the world order too, you should take to action. 20

यद्यदाचरति श्रेष्ठस्तत्तदेवेतरो जनः ।

य यत्प्रमाणं कुरुते लोकस्तदनुवर्तते ॥२१॥

For whatsoever a great man does, that very thing other man also do; whatever standard he sets up, the generality of men follow the same. 21

न मे पार्थास्ति कर्तव्यं त्रिषु लोकेषु किञ्चन ।

नानवाप्तमवाप्तव्यं वर्त एव च कर्मणि ॥२२॥

Arjuna, there is nothing in the three worlds for Me to do, nor is there anything worth attaining unattained by Me; yet I continue to work. 22

यदि ह्यहं न वर्तेयं जातु कर्मण्यतन्द्रितः ।

मम वर्त्मानुवर्तन्ते मनुष्याः पार्थ सर्वशः ॥२३॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

Should I not engage in action, unwearied at any time, great harm will come to the world; for, Arjuna, men follow My path in all matters. 23

उत्सीदेयुरिमे लोका न कुर्यां कर्म चेदहम् ।

संकरस्य च कर्ता स्यामुपहन्यामिमाः प्रजाः ॥२४॥

If I do not perform action, these worlds will perish; nay, I should be the author of confusion of castes and of the destruction of these people. 24

सक्ताः कर्मण्यविद्वांसो यथा कुर्वन्ति भारत ।

कुर्याद्विद्वांस्तथासक्तश्चिकीर्षुर्लोकसंग्रहम् ॥२५॥

Arjuna, as the unwise act with attachment, so should the wise man, seeking maintenance of the world order, act without attachment. 25



## Chapter III

न बुद्धिभेदं जनयेदज्ञानां कर्मसङ्गिनाम् ।  
जोषयेत्सर्वकर्माणि विद्वान्युक्तः समाचरन् ॥२६॥

A wise man established in Me should not unsettle the mind of the ignorant attached to action, but should get them to perform all their duties, duly performing them himself. 26

प्रकृतेः क्रियमाणानि गुणैः कर्माणि सर्वशः ।  
अहंकारविमूढात्मा कर्ताहमिति मन्यते ॥२७॥

All actions are being done by the modes of Prakṛti ( Primordial Matter ). The fool, whose mind is deluded by egoism considers himself to be the doer. 27

तत्त्ववित्तु महाबाहो गुणकर्मविभागयोः ।  
गुणा गुणेषु वर्तन्त इति मत्वा न सज्जते ॥२८॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

He, however, who knows the truth about the respective spheres of Guṇas ( modes of Prakṛti ) and actions, holding that it is the Guṇas ( in the shape of the senses, mind, etc. ) that move among the Guṇas ( objects of perception ), does not get attached to them, Arjuna. 28

प्रकृतेर्गुणसंमूढाः सज्जन्ते गुणकर्मसु ।  
तानकृत्स्नविदो मन्दान्कृत्स्नविन्न विचालयेत् ॥ २९ ॥

Those, who are completely deluded by the Guṇas ( modes ) of Prakṛti remain attached to those Guṇas and actions; the man of perfect knowledge should not unsettle the mind of those insufficiently knowing fools. 29

मयि सर्वाणि कर्माणि संन्यस्याध्यात्मचेतसा ।  
निराशीर्निर्ममो भूत्वा युध्यस्व विगतज्वरः ॥ ३० ॥

### Chapter III

Therefore, dedicating all actions to Me with your mind fixed on Me, the Self of all, freed from hope and the feeling of meum and cured of mental fever, fight. 30

ये मे मतमिदं नित्यमनुतिष्ठन्ति मानवाः ।

श्रद्धावन्तोऽनसूयन्तो मुच्यन्ते तेऽपि कर्मभिः ॥ ३१ ॥

Even those men, who, with an uncavilling and devout mind, always follow this doctrine of Mine, are freed from the binding effect of all actions. 31

ये त्वेतदभ्यसूयन्तो नानुतिष्ठन्ति मे मतम् ।

सर्वज्ञानविमूढांस्तान् विद्धि नष्टानचेतसः ॥ ३२ ॥

Those, however, who, finding fault with this doctrine of Mine, do not follow it, know them to be deluded in the matter of all knowledge, senseless and lost. 32

## The Bhagavadgītā

सदृशं चेष्टते स्वस्याः प्रकृतेर्ज्ञानवानपि ।

प्रकृतिं यान्ति भूतानि निग्रहः किं करिष्यति ॥ ३३ ॥

All beings follow their nature; even the wise man behaves in conformity with his nature. What can restraint do? 33

इन्द्रियस्येन्द्रियस्यार्थे रागद्वेषौ व्यवस्थितौ ।

तयोर्न वशमागच्छेत्तौ ह्यस्य परिपन्थिनौ ॥ ३४ ॥

Attraction and repulsion are rooted in all sense-objects. Man should never come under their sway, because these are the two main stumbling-blocks in his way. 34

श्रेयान् स्वधर्मो विगुणः परधर्मात्स्वनुष्ठितात् ।

स्वधर्मे निधनं श्रेयः परधर्मो भयावहः ॥ ३५ ॥

One's own duty, though devoid of merit, is preferable to the duty of another



## Chapter III

well performed. Even death in the performance of one's own duty brings blessedness: another's duty is fraught with fear. 35

अर्जुन उवाच—

अथ केन प्रयुक्तोऽयं पापं चरति पूरुषः ।

अनिच्छन्नपि वाष्णेय बलादिव नियोजितः ॥३६॥

Arjuna said:

Now impelled by what, Kṛṣṇa, does this man commit sin even involuntarily, as though driven by force ! 36

श्रीभगवानुवाच—

काम एष क्रोध एष रजोगुणसमुद्भवः ।

महाशनो महापाप्मा विद्ध्येनमिह वैरिणम् ॥३७॥

Śrī Bhagavān said:

It is desire, it is wrath, begotten of the element of Rajas, insatiable and

## The Bhagavadgītā

grossly wicked; know this to be the enemy in this case. 37

धूमेनाव्रियते वह्निर्यथाऽऽदर्शो मलेन च ।

यथोल्बेनावृतो गर्भस्तथा तेनेदमावृतम् ॥३८॥

As flame is enveloped by smoke, mirror by dirt, and embryo by the amnion, so Knowledge is enveloped by it (desire). 38

आवृतं ज्ञानमेतेन ज्ञानिनो नित्यवैरिणा ।

कामरूपेण कौन्तेय दुष्पूरेणानलेन च ॥३९॥

So, Arjuna, Knowledge is covered by this eternal enemy of the wise, the insatiable fire in the form of desire. 39

इन्द्रियाणि मनो बुद्धिरस्याधिष्ठानमुच्यते ।

एतैर्विमोहयत्येष ज्ञानमावृत्य देहिनम् ॥४०॥

The senses, the mind and the intellect are said to be its seat; enveloping

### Chapter III

Knowledge through these, it ( desire )  
deludes the embodied soul. 40

तस्मात्स्वमिन्द्रियाण्यादौ नियम्य भरतर्षभ ।

पाप्मानं प्रजहि ह्येनं ज्ञानविज्ञाननाशनम् ॥४१॥

Therefore, Arjuna, first controlling  
the senses, kill this wicked desire which  
obscures Jñāna ( Knowledge of the  
Absolute or Nirguṇa Brahmā ) and  
Vijñāna ( Knowledge of Sākāra Brahma  
or manifest Divinity ). 41

इन्द्रियाणि पराण्याहुरिन्द्रियेभ्यः परं मनः ।

मनसस्तु परा बुद्धिर्यो बुद्धेः परतस्तु सः ॥४२॥

The senses are said to be greater  
than the body; but greater than the senses  
is the mind. Greater than the mind is  
the intellect; and what is greater than  
the intellect is he ( the Self ). 42

## The Bhagavadgītā

एवं बुद्धेः परं बुद्ध्वा संस्तभ्यात्मानमात्मना ।

जहि शत्रुं महाबाहो कामरूपं दुरासदम् ॥४३॥

Thus, Arjuna, knowing that which is higher than the intellect and subduing the mind by reason, kill this enemy in the form of Desire, that is hard to overcome. 43

ॐ तत्सदिति श्रीमद्भगवद्गीतासूपनिषत्सु ब्रह्मविद्यायां  
योगशास्त्रे श्रीकृष्णार्जुनसंवादे कर्मयोगो  
नाम तृतीयोऽध्यायः ॥ ३ ॥

Thus, in the Upaniṣad sung by the Lord, the science of Brahma, the scripture on Yoga, the dialogue between Śrī Kṛṣṇa and Arjuna, ends the third chapter entitled "Karmayoga, or the Yoga of Action."





## Chapter IV

श्रीभगवानुवाच—

इमं विवस्वते योगं प्रोक्तवानहमव्ययम् ।

विवस्वान्मनवे प्राह मनुरिक्ष्वाकवेऽब्रवीत् ॥ १ ॥

Śrī Bhagavān said:

I taught this immortal Yoga to  
Vivaswān (Sun-god): Vivaswān conveyed

## The Bhagavadgītā

it to Manu(his son); and Manu imparted  
it to ( his son ) Ikṣwāku, 1

एवं परम्पराप्राप्तमिमं राजर्षयो विदुः ।  
स कालेनेह महता योगो नष्टः परंतप ॥ २ ॥

Thus handed down from father to son, Arjuna, this Yoga remained known to the Rājārṣis ( royal sages ). By great efflux of time, however, it has more or less disappeared. 2

स एवायं मया तेऽद्य योगः प्रोक्तः पुरातनः ।  
भक्तोऽसि मे सखा चेति रहस्यं ह्येतदुत्तमम् ॥ ३ ॥

The same ancient Yoga has this day been imparted to you by Me, because you are My devotee and friend, and also because this is a supreme secret. 3

## Chapter IV

अर्जुन उवाच—

अपरं भवतो जन्म परं जन्म विवस्वतः ।

कथमेतद्विजानीयां त्वमादौ प्रोक्तवानिति ॥ ४ ॥

Arjuna said:

You are of recent origin, while the birth of Vivaswān dates back to remote antiquity. How, then, am I to understand that you taught at the beginning of creation ? 4

श्रीभगवानुवाच—

बहूनि मे व्यतीतानि जन्मानि तव चार्जुन ।

तान्यहं वेद सर्वाणि न त्वं वेत्थ परंतप ॥ ५ ॥

Sri Bhagavān said:

Arjuna, you and I have passed through many births. I know them all, while you do not, O chastiser of foes. 5

## The Bhagavadgītā

अजोऽपि सन्नव्ययात्मा भूतानामीश्वरोऽपि सन् ।  
प्रकृतिं स्वामधिष्ठाय सम्भवाम्यात्ममायया ॥ ६ ॥

Though unborn and immortal, and  
also the Lord of all beings, I manifest  
Myself through My own Yogamāyā  
(divine potency), keeping My Nature  
(Prakṛti) under control. 6

यदा यदा हि धर्मस्य ग्लानिर्भवति भारत ।  
अभ्युत्थानमधर्मस्य तदाऽऽत्मानं सृजाम्यहम् ॥ ७ ॥

Arjuna, whenever there is decline of  
righteousness, and unrighteousness is in  
the ascendant, then I body Myself forth. 7

परित्राणाय साधूनां विनाशाय च दुष्कृताम् ।  
धर्मसंस्थापनार्थाय सम्भवामि युगे युगे ॥ ८ ॥

For the protection of the virtuous,  
for the destruction of evil-doers, and for



## Chapter IV

establishing Dharma (righteousness) on a firm footing, I am born from age to age. 8

जन्म कर्म च मे दिव्यमेवं यो वेत्ति तत्त्वतः ।

त्यक्त्वा देहं पुनर्जन्म नैति मामेति सोऽर्जुन ॥ ९ ॥

Arjuna, My birth and activities are divine. He who knows this in reality does not take birth again on leaving his body, but attains Me. 9

वीतरागभयक्रोधा मन्मया मामुपाश्रिताः ।

बहवो ज्ञानतपसा पूता मद्भावमागताः ॥ १० ॥

Completely rid of passion, fear and anger, wholly absorbed in Me, depending on Me, and purified by the penance of wisdom, many have become one with Me even in the past. 10

ये यथा मां प्रपद्यन्ते तांस्तथैव भजाम्यहम् ।

मम वर्त्मानुवर्तन्ते मनुष्याः पार्थ सर्वशः ॥ ११ ॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

Arjuna, howsoever men approach Me, even so do I seek them; for all men follow My path from all sides. 11

काङ्क्षन्तः कर्मणां सिद्धिं यजन्त इह देवताः ।

क्षिप्रं हि मानुषे लोके सिद्धिर्भवति कर्मजा ॥ १२ ॥

In this mortal world, men seeking the fruition of their activities worship the gods; for success born of actions follows quickly, 12

चातुर्वर्ण्यं मया सृष्टं गुणकर्मविभागशः ।

तस्य कर्तारमपि मां विद्ध्यकर्तारमव्ययम् ॥ १३ ॥

The four orders of society ( viz., the Brahman, the Kṣatriya, the Vaiśya and the Śūdra) were created by Me classifying them according to their prenatal qualities and apportioning corresponding duties

## Chapter IV

to them; though the author of this creation, know Me, the immortal Lord, to be a non-doer. 13

न मां कर्माणि लिम्पन्ति न मे कर्मफले स्पृहा ।

इति मां योऽभिजानाति कर्मभिर्न स बद्ध्यते ॥ १४ ॥

Since I have no craving for the fruit of actions, actions do not contaminate Me. Even he who thus knows Me in reality is not bound by actions. 14

एवं ज्ञात्वा कृतं कर्म पूर्वैरपि मुमुक्षुभिः ।

कुरु कर्मैव तस्मात्त्वं पूर्वैः पूर्वतरं कृतम् ॥ १५ ॥

Having known thus, action was performed even by the ancient seekers of salvation; therefore, do you also perform such actions as were performed by the ancients in the former times. 15



## The Bhagavadgītā

किं कर्म किमकर्मेति कवयोऽप्यत्र मोहिताः ।

तत्ते कर्म प्रवक्ष्यामि यज्ज्ञात्वा मोक्षयसेऽशुभात् ॥१६॥

Even the wise are at a loss to know what is action and what is inaction. Therefore, I shall expound to you the truth about action, knowing which you will be freed from its evil effect (binding nature ). 16

कर्मणो ह्यपि बोद्धव्यं बोद्धव्यं च विकर्मणः ।

अकर्मणश्च बोद्धव्यं गहना कर्मणो गतिः ॥१७॥

The truth about action must be known; and the truth of prohibited action must also be known; even so, the truth about inaction must be known. For mysterious are the ways of action. 17

कर्मण्यकर्म यः पश्येदकर्मणि च कर्म यः ।

स बुद्धिमान्मनुष्येषु स युक्तः कृत्स्नकर्मकृत् ॥१८॥



## Chapter IV

He, who sees inaction in action, and action in inaction, is wise among men; he is a Yogī, who has accomplished all action. 18

यस्य सर्वे समारम्भाः कामसंकल्पवर्जिताः ।

ज्ञानाग्निदग्धकर्माणं तमाहुः पण्डितं बुधाः ॥१९॥

He whose undertakings are all free from desire and thoughts of the world, and whose actions are burnt up by the fire of wisdom, him even the wise call a sage. 19

त्यक्त्वा कर्मफलासङ्गं नित्यतृप्तो निराश्रयः ।

कर्मण्यभिप्रवृत्तोऽपि नैव किञ्चित्करोति सः ॥२०॥

He, who, having totally given up attachment to actions and their fruits, has got over the dependence on the world, and is ever satisfied, does

## The Bhagavadgītā

nothing at all, though he may be ever engaged in action. 20

निराशीर्यतचित्तात्मा त्यक्तसर्वपरिग्रहः ।

शारीरं केवलं कर्म कुर्वन्नाप्नोति किल्बिषम् ॥२१॥

He, who has subdued his mind and body, has given up all objects of enjoyment and has no craving,—performing sheer bodily action, such a person does not incur sin. 21

यदृच्छालाभसंतुष्टो द्वन्द्वातीतो विमत्सरः ।

समः सिद्धावसिद्धौ च कृत्वापि न निबध्यते ॥२२॥

He, who is contented with whatever is got unsought, is free from jealousy and has transcended all pairs of opposites ( like joy and grief ), and is balanced in success and failure,—such a Karmayogi, though acting, is not bound. 22

## Chapter IV

गतसङ्गस्य मुक्तस्य ज्ञानावस्थितचेतसः ।

यज्ञायाचरतः कर्म समग्रं प्रविलीयते ॥२३॥

He, whose attachment has gone,  
whose mind is established in Knowledge,  
and who works for the sake of sacrifice,  
all actions of that liberated man melt  
away. 23

ब्रह्मार्पणं ब्रह्म हविर्ब्रह्माग्नौ ब्रह्मणा हुतम् ।

ब्रह्मैव तेन गन्तव्यं ब्रह्मकर्मसमाधिना ॥२४॥

*Act of offering A sacrifice*  
The sacrifice in which the ladle  
(with which the oblation is poured), etc.,  
is Brahma, the oblation itself is Brahma,  
even so the act of pouring the same into  
the fire, which is again Brahma, by the  
sacrificer, who is himself Brahma,—  
surely the goal to be reached by him,

## The Bhagavadgītā

who is absorbed in such sacrifice as Brahma, is also Brahma ( Absolute ). 24

दैवमेवापरे यज्ञं योगिनः पर्युपासते ।

ब्रह्माग्नावपरे यज्ञं यज्ञेनैवोपजुह्वति ॥२५॥

Other Yogis offer sacrifice in the shape of worship to the gods. Others pour into the fire of Brahma, the very sacrifice in the shape of the self, through the sacrifice known as the perception of identity. 25

श्रोत्रादीनीन्द्रियाण्यन्ये संयमाग्निषु जुह्वति ।

शब्दादीन्विषयानन्य इन्द्रियाग्निषु जुह्वति ॥२६॥

Others offer as sacrifice their senses of hearing, etc., into the fires of self-control. Other Yogis, again, offer sound and other objects of perception into the fires of the senses. 26



## Chapter IV

सर्वाणीन्द्रियकर्माणि प्राणकर्माणि चापरे ।  
आत्मसंयमयोगाग्नौ जुहति ज्ञानदीपिते ॥२७॥

Others sacrifice all the functions of their senses, and the functions of the vital airs, into the fire of Yoga, in the shape of self-control, which is kindled by wisdom. 27

द्रव्ययज्ञास्तपोयज्ञा योगयज्ञास्तथापरे ।  
स्वाध्यायज्ञानयज्ञाश्च यतयः संशितव्रताः ॥२८॥

Some perform sacrifice with material things, some offer sacrifice in the shape of penances, others sacrifice through the practice of Yoga, while some striving souls, observing austere vows, perform the sacrifice of wisdom, through the study of sacred texts. 28

## The Bhagavadgītā

अपाने जुह्वति प्राणं प्राणेऽपानं तथापरे ।

प्राणापानगती रुद्ध्वा प्राणावामपरायणाः ॥२९॥

अपरे नियताहाराः प्राणान् प्राणेषु जुह्वति ।

सर्वेऽप्येते यज्ञविदो यज्ञक्षपितकल्मषाः ॥३०॥

Other Yogis offer the Prāṇa breath into the Apāna; even so, others, the Apāna into the Prāṇa. There are still others given to the practice of Prāṇāyāma ( breath-control ) who having regulated their diet and controlled the course of both the Prāṇa and Apāna airs pour their life-breaths into life-breaths. All these have their sins destroyed by sacrifice and know the truth about sacrifice. 29,30

यज्ञशिष्टामृतभुजो यान्ति ब्रह्म सनातनम् ।

नाभं लोकोऽस्त्ययज्ञस्य कुतोऽन्यः कुरुसत्तम ॥३१॥

## Chapter IV

Arjuna, Yogis, who partake of the nectar in the form of the remains of sacrifice, attain the eternal Brahma. To the man, who does not offer sacrifice, even this world is not happy; how then, can the other world be happy ? 31

एवं बहुविधा यज्ञा वितता ब्रह्मणो मुखे ।

कर्मजान्विद्धि तान्सर्वानेवं ज्ञात्वा विमोक्ष्यसे ॥ ३२ ॥

Many such forms of sacrifice have been set forth in detail through the mouth of the Vedas; know them all as begotten of the actions of body, mind and the senses. Thus, knowing the truth about them, you shall be freed from the bondage of Karma ( through their practice ). 32

श्रेयान् द्रव्यमयाद्यज्ञाज्ज्ञानयज्ञः परंतप ।

सर्वं कर्माखिलं पार्थ ज्ञाने परिसमाप्यते ॥ ३३ ॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

Arjuna, sacrifice in the form of Knowledge is superior to sacrifice performed with material things. For all actions without exception culminate in Knowledge, O son of Kuntī. 33

तद्विद्धि प्रणिपातेन परिप्रश्नेन सेवया ।  
उपदेक्ष्यन्ति ते ज्ञानं ज्ञानिनस्तत्त्वदर्शिनः ॥३४॥

Attain this Knowledge by all means, if you prostrate yourself at the feet of the wise, render them all forms of service, and question them with a guileless heart, again and again, those wise seers of Truth will unfold that Knowledge to you. 34

यज्ज्ञात्वा न पुनर्मोहमेवं यास्यसि पाण्डव ।  
येन भूतान्यशेषेण द्रक्ष्यस्यात्मन्यथो मयि ॥३५॥



## Chapter IV

Arjuna, acquiring that Knowledge, you will no more be subjected to delusion like this, and through it you will see all beings first in your own self, and then in Me ( the Oversoul ). 35

अपि चेदसि पापेभ्यः सर्वेभ्यः पापकृत्तमः ।

सर्वं ज्ञानप्लवेनैव वृजिनं संतरिष्यसि ॥३६॥

Even if you are the most sinful of all sinners, you will cross over all sin by the raft of Knowledge. 36

यथैधांसि समिद्धोऽग्निर्भस्मसात्कुरुतेऽर्जुन ।

ज्ञानाग्निः सर्वकर्माणि भस्मसात्कुरुते तथा ॥३७॥

For, as the blazing fire reduces the fuel to ashes, Arjuna, even so the fire of Knowledge reduces all actions to ashes. 37

## The Bhagavadgītā

न हि ज्ञानेन सदृशं पवित्रमिह विद्यते ।

तत्स्वयं योगसंसिद्धः कालेनात्मनि विन्दति ॥३८॥

In this world, there is no purifier like Knowledge: he, who has attained purity of heart through practice of Karmayoga, automatically realizes it in the self in course of time. 38

श्रद्धावाँलभते ज्ञानं तत्परः संयतेन्द्रियः ।

ज्ञानं लब्ध्वा परां शान्तिमचिरेणाधिगच्छति ॥३९॥

He, who has fully controlled his senses, is exclusively devoted to spiritual practice and is full of faith, attains Knowledge; having gained Knowledge, he immediately attains supreme peace ( in the form of God-Realization ). 39

अज्ञश्चाश्रद्धानश्च संशयात्मा विनश्यति ।

नायं लोकोऽस्ति न परो न सुखं संशयात्मनः ॥४०॥

## Chapter IV

He, who lacks discrimination, is devoid of faith, and is possessed by doubt, is lost to the spiritual path. For the doubting soul in particular, there is neither this world nor the world beyond, nor even happiness. 40

योगसंन्यस्तकर्माणं ज्ञानसंछिन्नसंशयम् ।

आत्मवन्तं न कर्माणि निबद्धान्ति धनंजय ॥४१॥

Arjuna, he who has dedicated all his actions to God according to the spirit of Karmayoga, whose doubts have been dispelled by wisdom, and who is self-possessed, actions do not bind him. 41

तस्मादज्ञानसंभूतं हृत्स्थं ज्ञानासिनाऽऽत्मनः ।

छिन्नैवैनं संशयं योगमातिष्ठोत्तिष्ठ भारत ॥४२॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

Therefore, Arjuna, cutting asunder with the sword of Knowledge, this doubt in your heart, born of ignorance, establish yourself in Karmayoga (in the form of even-mindedness), and stand up for the fight. 42

ॐ तत्सदिति श्रीमद्भगवद्गीतासूपनिषत्सु ब्रह्मविद्यायां  
योगशास्त्रे श्रीकृष्णार्जुनसंवादे ज्ञानकर्मसंन्यास-  
योगो नाम चतुर्थोऽध्यायः ॥ ४ ॥

Thus, in the Upaniṣad sung by the Lord, the science of Brahma, the scripture on Yoga, the dialogue between Śrī Kṛṣṇa and Arjuna, ends the fourth Chapter entitled "The Yoga of Knowledge as well as the disciplines of Action and Knowledge"



## Chapter V

अर्जुन उवाच—

संन्यासं कर्मणां कृष्ण पुनर्योगं च शंससि ।

यच्छ्रेय एतयोरेकं तन्मे ब्रूहि सुनिश्चितम् ॥ १ ॥

Arjuna said:

Kṛṣṇa, you extol Sāṅkhyayoga ( the  
Yoga of Knowledge ) and then the Yoga

## The Bhagavadgītā

of Action. Pray tell me which of the two is decidedly better. 1

श्रीभगवानुवाच—

संन्यासः कर्मयोगश्च निःश्रेयसकरावुभौ ।

तयोस्तु कर्मसंन्यासात्कर्मयोगो विशिष्यते ॥ २ ॥

Śrī Bhagavān said:

The Yoga of Knowledge and the Yoga of Action both lead to supreme bliss. Of the two, however, the Yoga of Action ( being easier of practice ) is superior to the Yoga of Knowledge. 2

ज्ञेयः स नित्यसंन्यासी यो न द्वेष्टि न काङ्क्षति ।

निर्व्वन्द्वो हि महाबाहो सुखं बन्धात्प्रमुच्यते ॥ ३ ॥

The Karmayogī, who neither hates nor desires, should be ever considered a

## Chapter V

Sannyāsi ( renouncer ). For, Arjuna, he, who has transcended the pairs of opposites, is easily freed from bondage. 3

सांख्ययोगौ पृथग्बालाः प्रवदन्ति न पण्डिताः।

एकमप्यास्थितः सम्यग्भयोर्विन्दते फलम् ॥ ४ ॥

It is the ignorant, not the wise, who say that Sāṅkhyayoga and Karmayoga are productive of divergent results. For one, who is firmly established in either, gets the fruit of both (viz., God-Realization). 4

यत्सांख्यैः प्राप्यते स्थानं तद्योगैरपि गम्यते ।

एकं सांख्यं च योगं च यः पश्यति स पश्यति ॥ ५ ॥

The supreme state, which is reached by the Sāṅkhyayogī, is attained also by the Karmayogī. Therefore, he, who sees

## The Bhagavadgītā

Sāṅkhyayoga and Karmayoga as one, so far as their result goes, really sees. 5

संन्यासस्तु महाबाहो दुःखमाप्तुमयोगतः ।

योगयुक्तो मुनिर्ब्रह्म नचिरेणाधिगच्छति ॥ ६ ॥

Without Karmayoga, however, Sāṅkhyayoga ( or renunciation of doership in relation to all activities of the mind, senses and the body ) is difficult to attain; whereas the Karmayogī, who keeps his mind fixed on God, reaches Brahma in no time, Arjuna. 6

योगयुक्तो विशुद्धात्मा विजितात्मा जितेन्द्रियः ।

सर्वभूतात्मभूतात्मा कुर्वन्नपि न लिप्यते ॥ ७ ॥

The Karmayogī, who has fully conquered his mind and subdued his



## Chapter V

senses, whose heart is pure, and who has identified his self with the Self of all beings ( viz., God ), remains unaffected, even though performing action. 7

नैव किञ्चित्करोमीति युक्तो मन्येत तत्त्ववित् ।

पश्यञ्शृण्वन्स्पृशन्निघ्नन्नश्नन्गच्छन्स्वपञ्चसन् ॥ ८ ॥

प्रलपन् विसृजन् गृह्णन्नुन्मिषन्निमिषन्नपि ।

इन्द्रियाणीन्द्रियार्थेषु वर्तन्त इति धारयन् ॥ ९ ॥

The Sāṅkhyayogi, however, who knows the reality of things, even though seeing, hearing, touching, smelling, eating, going, sleeping, breathing, speaking, passing urine and stools, taking, and opening or closing the eyes, must believe that he does nothing, holding that it is the senses that are acting on sense-objects. 8, 9

## The Bhagavadgītā

ब्रह्मण्याधाय कर्माणि सङ्गं त्यक्त्वा करोति यः ।

लिप्यते न स पापेन पद्मपत्रमिवाम्भसा ॥१०॥

He, who acts, offering all actions to God, and shaking off attachment, remains untouched by sin, as the lotus leaf by water. 10

कायेन मनसा बुद्ध्या केवलैरिन्द्रियैरपि ।

योगिनः कर्म कुर्वन्ति सङ्गं त्यक्त्वाऽऽत्मशुद्धये ॥११॥

The Karmayogis perform action only with their senses, mind, intellect, and body as well, withdrawing the feeling of meum in respect of them and shaking off attachment, simply for the sake of self-purification. 11

युक्तः कर्मफलं त्यक्त्वा शान्तिमाप्नोति नैष्ठिकीम् ।

अयुक्तः कामकारेण फले सक्तो निबध्यते ॥१२॥

## Chapter V

Offering the fruit of actions to God, the Karmayogī attains peace in the shape of God-Realization; whereas he who works with a selfish motive, being attached to the fruit of actions through desire, gets tied down. 12

सर्वकर्माणि मनसा संन्यस्यास्ते सुखं वशी ।

नवद्वारे पुरे देही नैव कुर्वन्न कारयन् ॥१३॥

The self-controlled Sāṅkhyayogī doing nothing himself and getting nothing done by others, rests happily in God, mentally relegating all actions to the city of nine gates (the body with nine holes). 13

न कर्तृत्वं न कर्माणि लोकस्य सृजति प्रभुः ।

न कर्मफलसंयोगं स्वभावस्तु प्रवर्तते ॥१४॥

The Lord determines not the doership nor the doings of beings, nor even their contact with the fruit of actions. It is



## The Bhagavadgītā

Nature that functions (deriving its motive power from God ). 14

नादत्ते कस्यचित्पापं न चैव सुकृतं विभुः ।

अज्ञानेनावृतं ज्ञानं तेन मुह्यन्ति जन्तवः ॥१५॥

The omnipresent Lord does not partake of the virtue or sin of anyone. Knowledge is enveloped in ignorance; hence it is that beings are constantly falling a prey to delusion. 15

ज्ञानेन तु तदज्ञानं येषां नाशितमात्मनः ।

तेषामादित्यवज्ज्ञानं प्रकाशयति तत्परम् ॥१६॥

In the case, however, of those whose said ignorance has been destroyed by knowledge of God, that wisdom shining like the sun reveals the Supreme. 16

तदबुद्ध्यस्तदात्मानस्तन्निष्ठास्तत्परायणाः ।

गच्छन्त्यपुनरावृत्तिं ज्ञाननिर्धूतकल्मषाः ॥१७॥



## Chapter V

Those whose mind and intellect are wholly merged in Him, who are constantly established in identity with Him, and are exclusively devoted to Him, their sins being wiped out by wisdom, go to whence there is no return. 17

विद्याविनयसम्पन्ने ब्राह्मणे गवि हस्तिनि ।

शुनि चैव श्वपाके च पण्डिताः समदर्शिनः ॥ १८ ॥

The wise look with the same eye on a Brahman endowed with learning and culture, a cow, an elephant, a dog, and a pariah. 18

इहैव तैर्जितः सर्गो येषां साम्ये स्थितं मनः ।

निर्दोषं हि समं ब्रह्म तस्माद् ब्रह्मणि ते स्थिताः ॥ १९ ॥

Even here is the mortal plane conquered by those whose mind is established in enquanimity; since the Absolute is free

## The Bhagavadgītā

from blemish and equanimous, hence they are established in the Eternal. 19

न प्रहृष्येत्प्रियं प्राप्य नोद्विजेत्प्राप्य चाप्रियम्।

स्थिरबुद्धिरसम्मूढो ब्रह्मविद् ब्रह्मणि स्थितः ॥२०॥

He, who, with reason firm and free from doubt, rejoices not on obtaining what is agreeable, and does not feel perturbed on meeting with the unpleasant, that knower of Brahma lives eternally in identity with It. 20

बाह्यस्पर्शेष्वसक्तात्मा विन्दत्यात्मनि यत्सुखम्।

स ब्रह्मयोगयुक्तात्मा सुखमक्षयमश्नुते ॥२१॥

He, whose mind remains unattached to external enjoyments, derives through meditation the unmixed joy, which is inherent in the soul; then that Yogī, having completely identified himself through meditation with Brahma, enjoys eternal Bliss. 21

## Chapter V

ये हि संस्पर्शजा भोगा दुःखयोनय एव ते ।

आद्यन्तवन्तः कौन्तेय न तेषु रमते बुधः ॥२२॥

The pleasures which are born of sense-contacts are verily sources of pain ( though appearing as enjoyable to worldly-minded people ). They have a beginning and an end ( they come and go ). Arjuna, it is for this reason that a wise man does not indulge in them. 22

शक्नोतीहैव यः सोढुं प्राक्शरीरविमोक्षणात् ।

कामक्रोधोद्वेगं वेगं स युक्तः स सुखी नरः ॥२३॥

He who is able to stand, here on earth, before casting off this body, the urges of lust and anger, he is a Yogi—a harmonized soul; he is a happy man. 23

योऽन्तःसुखोऽन्तरारामस्तथान्तर्ज्योतिरेव यः ।

स योगी ब्रह्मनिर्वाणं ब्रह्मभूतोऽधिगच्छति ॥२४॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

He, who is happy within himself, enjoys within himself the delight of the soul, and even so is illumined by the inner light ( light of the soul ), such a Yogī ( Sāṅkhyayogī ) identified with Brahma attains Brahma, who is all Peace. 24

लभन्ते ब्रह्मनिर्वाणमृषयः क्षीणकल्मषाः ।

छिन्नद्वैधा यतात्मानः सर्वभूतहिते रताः ॥ २५ ॥

The seers whose sins have been washed away, whose doubts have been dispelled by Knowledge, whose mind is firmly established in God and who are actively engaged in promoting the welfare of all beings, attain Brahma, who is all Peace. 25

कामक्रोधवियुक्तानां यतीनां यतचेतसाम् ।

अमितो ब्रह्मनिर्वाणं वर्तते विदितात्मनाम् ॥ २६ ॥



## Pleasure Chapter V

To those wise men, who are free from lust and anger, who have subdued their mind and have realized God, Brahma, the abode of eternal peace, is present all round. 26

स्पर्शान् कृत्वा बहिर्बाह्यांश्चक्षुश्चैवान्तरे भ्रुवोः ।  
प्राणापानौ समौ कृत्वा नासाभ्यन्तरचारिणौ ॥ २७ ॥  
यतेन्द्रियमनोबुद्धिर्मुनिर्मोक्षपरायणः ।  
विगतेच्छाभयक्रोधो यः सदा मुक्त एव सः ॥ २८ ॥

Shutting out the thoughts of external sense-enjoyments, with the eyes fixed on the space between the eye-brows, having equalized the Prāṇa and Apāna breaths ( outward and inward breaths ) flowing within the nostrils, he who has brought his senses, mind and reason under control,—such a contemplative soul intent

## The Bhagavadgītā

on liberation and free from desire, fear  
and anger, is ever liberated. 27, 28

भोक्तारं यज्ञतपसां सर्वलोकमहेश्वरम् ।

सुहृदं सर्वभूतानां ज्ञात्वा मां शान्तिमृच्छति ॥ २९ ॥

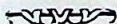
Having known Me in reality as the  
enjoyer of sacrifices and austerities, the  
supreme Lord of all the worlds, and the  
disinterested friend of all beings, My  
devotee attains peace. 29

ॐ तत्सदिति श्रीमद्भगवद्गीतासूपनिषत्सु ब्रह्मविद्यायां

योगशास्त्रे श्रीकृष्णार्जुनसंवादे कर्मसंन्यासयोगो

नाम पञ्चमोऽध्यायः ॥ ५ ॥

Thus, in the Upaniṣad sung by the Lord, the  
science of Brahma, the scripture on Yoga,  
the dialogue between Śrī Kṛṣṇa and  
Arjuna, ends the fifth chapter,  
entitled "The Yogas of Action  
and Knowledge."



## Chapter VI

श्रीभगवानुवाच—

अनाश्रितः कर्मफलं कार्यं कर्म करोति यः ।

स संन्यासी च योगी च न निरग्निर्न चाक्रियः॥ १ ॥

Sri Bhagavān said:

He, who does his duty without expecting the fruit of actions, is a Sannyāsi

## The Bhagavadgītā

(Sāṅkhyayogī) and a Yogī (Karmayogī) both. He is no Sannyāsī (renouncer) who has merely renounced the sacred fire; even so, he is no Yogī, who has merely given up all activity. 1

यं संन्यासमिति प्रादुर्योगं तं विद्धि पाण्डव ।

न ह्यसंन्यस्तसंकल्पो योगी भवति कश्चन ॥ २ ॥

Arjuna, what they speak of, as Sannyāsa, know that to be the same as Yoga; for none becomes a Yogī, who has not given up thoughts of the world. 2

भारुक्षोर्मुनेर्योगं कर्म कारणमुच्यते ।

योगारूढस्य तस्यैव शमः कारणमुच्यते ॥ ३ ॥

To the contemplative soul, who desires to rise to the heights of Karmayoga ( in the form of equanimity ), action without



## Chapter VI

motive is spoken of as the ladder; for the same man when he is established in Yoga, tranquillity of mind ( absence of all thoughts of the world ) is spoken of as the way ( to blessedness ). 3

यदा हि नेन्द्रियार्थेषु न कर्मस्वनुषज्जते ।

सर्वसंकल्पसंन्यासी योगारूढस्तदोच्यते ॥ ४ ॥

When a man ceases to have any attachment either for the objects of senses or for actions and has renounced all thoughts of the world, he is said to have attained Yoga. 4

उद्धरेदात्मनाऽऽत्मानं नात्मानमवसादयेत् ।

आत्मैव ह्यात्मनो बन्धुरात्मैव रिपुरात्मनः ॥ ५ ॥

One should lift oneself up by one's own efforts and should not degrade one-

## The Bhagavadgītā

self; for one's own self is one's friend, and one's own self is one's enemy. 5

बन्धुरात्माऽऽत्मनस्तस्य येनात्मैवात्मना जितः ।

अनात्मनस्तु शत्रुत्वे वर्तेतात्मैव शत्रुवत् ॥ ६ ॥

One's own self is the friend of that soul by whom the lower self ( viz., the mind, the senses and the body ) has been conquered; on the other hand, the very self of him, who has not conquered his lower self, behaves inimically like one's own enemy. 6

जितात्मनः प्रशान्तस्य परमात्मा समाहितः ।

शीतोष्णसुखदुःखेषु तथा मानापमानयोः ॥ ७ ॥

The Supreme Spirit is firmly established in the knowledge of the self-controlled man whose mind is perfectly

## Chapter VI

calm in the midst of pairs of opposites,  
such as cold and heat, joy and sorrow,  
and honour and ignominy. 7

ज्ञानविज्ञानतृप्तात्मा कूटस्थो विजितेन्द्रियः ।

युक्त इत्युच्यते योगी समलोष्टाश्मकाञ्चनः ॥ ८ ॥

The Yogī whose mind is sated with  
Jñāna ( Knowledge of Nirguṇa Brahma )  
and Vijñāna ( Knowledge of manifest  
Divinity), who is unchangeable under all  
circumstances, whose senses are thoroughly  
subdued, and to whom a clod, a stone  
and a piece of gold make no difference,  
is spoken of as a God-realized soul. 8

सुहृन्मित्रार्युदासीनमध्यस्थद्वेष्यबन्धुषु ।

साधुष्वपि च पापेषु समबुद्धिर्विशिष्यते ॥ ९ ॥

He, who regards well-wishers, friends,  
foes, neutrals, mediators, the objects of

## The Bhagavadgītā

hatred, relatives, the virtuous and the sinful alike, stands supreme. 9

योगी युञ्जीत सततमात्मानं रहसिस्थितः ।

एकाकी यतचित्तात्मा निराशीरपरिग्रहः ॥ १० ॥

The Yogī, who has subdued his mind and body, and who is free from desires and bereft of possessions,—living in seclusion all by himself alone he should constantly engage his mind in meditation. 10

शुचौ देशे प्रतिष्ठाप्य स्थिरमासनमात्मनः ।

नात्युच्छ्रितं नातिनीचं चैलाजिनकुशोत्तरम् ॥ ११ ॥

In a clean spot having firmly placed his seat with Kuśa grass, a deerskin and a cloth spread thereon one below another (Kuśa below, deerskin in the middle and



## Chapter VI

cloth uppermost ), neither very high nor very low. 11

तत्रैकाग्रं मनः कृत्वा यतचित्तेन्द्रियक्रियः ।

उपविश्यासने युञ्ज्याद्योगमात्मविशुद्धये ॥१२॥

And sitting on that seat, concentrating the mind and controlling the functions of the mind and the senses, he should practise Yoga for self-purification. 12

समं कायशिरोग्रीवं धारयन्नचलं स्थिरः ।

संप्रेक्ष्य नासिकाग्रं स्वं दिशश्चानवलोकयन् ॥१३॥

Keeping the trunk, head and neck straight and steady, remaining firm and looking at the tip of his nose, without looking in other directions. 13

प्रशान्तात्मा विगतभीर्ब्रह्मचारिव्रते स्थितः ।

मनः संयम्य मच्चित्तो युक्त आसीत मत्परः ॥१४॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

Pledged to the vow of continence and fearless, keeping himself perfectly calm and with the mind thoroughly brought under control and fixed on Me, the vigilant Yogī should sit absorbed in Me. 14

युञ्जन्नेवं सदाऽऽत्मानं योगी नियतमानसः ।

शान्तिं निर्वाणपरमां मत्संस्थामधिगच्छति ॥ १५ ॥

Thus constantly applying his mind to Me, the Yogī of subdued mind attains the lasting Peace, consisting of supreme bliss, which rests in Me. 15

नात्यश्नतस्तु योगोऽस्ति न चैकान्तमनश्नतः ।

न चाति स्वप्नशीलस्य जाग्रतो नैव चार्जुन ॥ १६ ॥

Arjuna, this Yoga is not for him who eats too much, nor for him who does not eat at all, nor for him who is given to too

## Chapter VI

much sleep, nor for him who is  
ceaselessly awake. 16

युक्ताहारविहारस्य युक्तचेष्टस्य कर्मसु ।  
युक्तस्वप्नावबोधस्य योगो भवति दुःखहा ॥१७॥

Yoga, which rids one of woe, is  
accomplished only by him who is  
regulated in diet and recreation, regulated  
in performing actions, and regulated in  
sleeping and waking. 17

यदा विनियतं चित्तमात्मन्येवावतिष्ठते ।  
निःस्पृहः सर्वकामेभ्यो युक्त इत्युच्यते तदा ॥१८॥

When the mind brought under  
complete control gets focussed on God  
alone, then the person, who is free from  
yearning for all enjoyments, is said to be  
established in Yoga. 18

## The Bhagavadgītā

यथा दीपो निवातस्थो नेङ्गते सोपमा स्मृता ।

योगिनो यतचित्तस्य युञ्जतो योगमात्मनः ॥१९॥

As a light does not shake in a place sheltered from the wind, analogous is stated to be the case of the subdued mind of the Yogī practising meditation on God. 19

यत्रोपरमते चित्तं निरुद्धं योगसेवया ।

यत्र चैवात्मनाऽऽत्मानं पश्यन्नात्मनि तुष्यति ॥२०॥

The state in which, curbed through practice of Yoga, the mind comes to rest, and in which, realizing God through subtle reason ( purified by meditation on God ) the soul rejoices only in God. 20

सुखमात्यन्तिकं यत्तद् बुद्धिग्राह्यमतीन्द्रियम् ।

वेत्ति यत्र न चैवायं स्थितश्चलति तत्त्वतः ॥२१॥



## Chapter VI

Nay, in which the soul experiences the eternal and supersensuous joy which can be apprehended only through subtle and acute reason, and wherein established the said Yogī moves not from Truth. 21

यं लब्ध्वा चापरं लाभं मन्यते नाधिकं ततः ।

यस्मिन्स्थितो न दुःखेन गुरुणापि विचाल्यते ॥ २२ ॥

And having obtained which he does not reckon any other gain as greater than that, and established in which he is not moved even by great sorrow, 22

तं विद्याद् दुःखसंयोगं वियोगं योगसंज्ञितम् ।

स निश्चयेन योक्तव्यो योगोऽनिर्विण्णचेतसा ॥ २३ ॥

That state called Yoga, which is free from the contact of pain ( in the form of transmigration ), should be known. Nay,

## The Bhagavadgita

this Yoga should be resolutely practised  
with an unwearied mind. 23

संकल्पप्रभवान् कामास्त्यक्त्वा सर्वानशेषतः।

मनसैवेन्द्रियग्रामं विनियम्य समन्ततः ॥२४॥

Completely giving up all desires  
arising from thoughts of the world,  
and fully restraining the senses from  
all sides by the mind. 24

शनैः शनैरुपरमेद् बुद्ध्या धृतिगृहीतया ।

आत्मसंस्थं मनः कृत्वा न किञ्चिदपि चिन्तयेत् ॥२५॥

He should through gradual practice  
attain tranquillity; and having established  
the mind in God through reason con-  
trolled by steadfastness, he should not  
think of anything else. 25

## Chapter VI

यतो यतो निश्चरति मनश्चञ्चलमस्थिरम् ।

ततस्ततो नियम्यैतदात्मन्येव वशं नयेत् ॥२६॥

Restraining the restless and fidgety mind from all those objects after which it runs, he should repeatedly concentrate it on God. 26

प्रशान्तमनसं ह्येनं योगिनं सुखमुत्तमम् ।

उपैति शान्तरजसं ब्रह्मभूतमकल्मषम् ॥२७॥

For to the Yogī, whose mind is perfectly calm, who is sinless, whose passion is subdued, and who is identified with Brahma, supreme happiness comes ( as a matter of course ). 27

युञ्जन्नेवं सदाऽऽत्मानं योगी विगतकल्मषः ।

सुखेन ब्रह्मसंस्पर्शमत्यन्तं सुखमश्नुते ॥२८॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

The sinless Yogī thus, uniting his self constantly with God, easily enjoys the eternal bliss of oneness with Brahma. 28

सर्वभूतस्थमात्मानं सर्वभूतानि चात्मनि ।

ईक्षते योगयुक्तात्मा सर्वत्र समदर्शनः ॥२९॥

The Yogī, who is united in identity with the all-pervading, infinite, consciousness, and looks on all with an equal eye, sees the Self present in all beings, and all beings existing in the Self. 29

यो मां पश्यति सर्वत्र सर्वं च मयि पश्यति ।

तस्याहं न प्रणश्यामि स च मे न प्रणश्यति ॥३०॥

He who sees Me (the Universal Self) present in all beings, and sees all beings existing in Me, I am never out of sight of him, nor is he ever out of sight of Me. 30



## Chapter VI

सर्वभूतस्थितं यो मां भजत्येकत्वमास्थितः ।

सर्वथा वर्तमानोऽपि स योगी मयि वर्तते ॥३१॥

He who, established in unity, worships Me as residing in all beings (as their very Self), that Yogi, though engaged in all forms of activities, dwells in Me. 31

आत्मौपम्येन सर्वत्र समं पश्यति योऽर्जुन ।

सुखं वा यदि वा दुःखं स योगी परमो मतः ॥३२॥

Arjuna, he who looks on all as one, on the analogy of his own self, and looks upon the pleasure and pain of all with a similar eye, such a Yogi is regarded as supreme. 32

अर्जुन उवाच—

योऽयं योगस्त्वया प्रोक्तः साम्येन मधुसूदन ।

एतस्याहं न पश्यामि चञ्चलत्वात्स्थितिं स्थिराम् ॥३३॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

Arjuna said:

Kṛṣṇa, this Yoga in the form of equanimity, which You have taught, owing to restlessness of mind I do not perceive its stability. 33

चञ्चलं हि मनः कृष्ण प्रमाथि बलवद् दृढम् ।

तस्याहं निग्रहं मन्ये वायोरिव सुदुष्करम् ॥ ३३ ॥

For, Kṛṣṇa, the mind is very unsteady, turbulent, tenacious and powerful; therefore, I consider it as difficult to control as the wind. 34

श्रीभगवानुवाच—

असंशयं महाबाहो मनो दुर्निग्रहं चलम् ।

अभ्यासेन तु कौन्तेय वैराग्येण च गृह्यते ॥ ३५ ॥

Srī Bhagavān said:

The mind is without doubt unsteady and difficult to curb, Arjuna; but it can be

## Chapter VI

controlled through practice ( of meditation ) and dispassion, O son of Kuntī. 35

असंयतात्मना योगो दुष्प्राप इति मे मतिः ।

वश्यात्मना तु यतता शक्योऽवाप्तुमुपायतः ॥३६॥

Yoga is difficult of achievement for one whose mind is not subdued: by him, however, who has the mind under control, and is ceaselessly striving, it can be easily attained through practice; such is My conviction. 36

अर्जुन उवाच—

अयतिः श्रद्धयोपेतो योगाच्चलितमानसः ।

अप्राप्य योगसंसिद्धिं कां गतिं कृष्ण गच्छति ॥३७॥

Arjuna said:

Kṛṣṇa, he who, though endowed with faith, has not been able to subdue his passions, and whose mind is therefore

## The Bhagavadgītā

diverted from Yoga ( at the time of death ),—failing to achieve perfection in Yoga ( God-Realization ) what fate does he meet with ? 37

कचिन्नोभयविभ्रष्टदिच्छाभ्रमिव नश्यति ।

अप्रतिष्ठो महाबाहो विमूढो ब्रह्मणः पथि ॥३८॥

Kṛṣṇa, deluded in the path of God and without anything to stand upon, does he not perish like the torn cloud, deprived of both God-Realization and worldly enjoyment ? 38

एतन्मे संशयं कृष्ण छेत्तुमर्हस्यशेषतः ।

त्वदन्यः संशयस्यास्य छेत्ता न ह्युपपद्यते ॥३९॥

Kṛṣṇa, it behoves You to dispel this doubt of mine completely; for none other than Yourself can be found, who can clear this doubt. 39



## Chapter VI

श्रीभगवानुवाच—

पार्थ नैवेह नामुत्र विनाशस्तस्य विद्यते ।

नहि कल्याणकृत्कश्चिद् दुर्गतिं तात गच्छति ॥४०॥

Śrī Bhagavān said:

Dear Arjuna, there is no fall for him either here or hereafter. For, none who works for self-redemption (or God-Realization ) meets with an evil destiny. 40

प्राप्य पुण्यकृतां लोकानुषित्वा शाश्वतीः समाः ।

शुचीनां श्रीमतां गेहे योगभ्रष्टोऽभिजायते ॥४१॥

He who has fallen from Yoga, having obtained the higher worlds (heaven, etc.) to which men of meritorious deeds alone are entitled, and having resided there for countless years, takes birth in the house of pious and wealthy men, 41

अथवा योगिनामेव कुले भवति धीमताम् ।

एतद्धि दुर्लभतरं लोके जन्म यदीदृशम् ॥४२॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

Or ( if he has developed dispassion )  
he may be born in the family of enlightened  
Yogis; but this kind of birth is very  
difficult to obtain in this world. 42

तत्र तं बुद्धिसंयोगं लभते पौर्वदेहिकम् ।

यतते च ततो भूयः संसिद्धौ कुरुनन्दन ॥४३॥

Arjuna, there he regains the understanding of his previous birth ( *i. e.*, the latencies of the Yoga of even-mindedness are roused in him ); and through that he strives, with greater vigour than before, for perfection ( in the form of God-Realization ). 43

पूर्वाभ्यासेन तेनैव हियते ह्यवशोऽपि सः ।

जिज्ञासुरपि योगस्य शब्दब्रह्मातिवर्तते ॥४४॥

The one, who takes birth in a rich family, though subject to the senses, feels drawn towards God by force of this

## Chapter VI

prenatal habit, and the seeker of the Yoga of equanimity also transcends the fruit of actions performed with some motive as laid down in the Vedas. 44

प्रयत्नाद्यतमानस्तु योगी संशुद्धकिल्बिषः ।

अनेकजन्मसंसिद्धस्ततो याति परां गतिम् ॥४५॥

The Yogī, however, who diligently takes up the practice, attaining perfection in this very life through the help of latencies of many births, and being thoroughly purged of sin, forthwith reaches the supreme state. 45

तपस्विभ्योऽधिको योगी ज्ञानिभ्योऽपि मतोऽधिकः ।

कर्मिभ्यश्चाधिको योगी तस्माद्योगी भवार्जुन ॥४६॥

The Yogī is superior to the ascetics; he is deemed superior even to those versed in sacred lore. The Yogī is superior

## The Bhagavadgītā

even to those who perform action with some motive. Therefore, Arjuna, do you become a Yogī. 46

योगिनामपि सर्वेषां मद्भक्तेनान्तरात्मना ।

श्रद्धावान् भजते यो मां स मे युक्ततमो मतः ॥४७॥

Even among all Yogīs, he who devoutly worships Me with his mind focussed on Me is considered by Me to be the best Yogī. 47

ॐ तत्सदिति श्रीमद्भगवद्गीतासूपनिषत्सु ब्रह्मविद्यायां

योगशास्त्रे श्रीकृष्णार्जुनसंवादे आत्मसंयम-

योगो नाम षष्ठोऽध्यायः ॥ ६ ॥

Thus, in the Upaniṣad sung by the Lord, the science of Brahma, the scripture on Yoga, the dialogue between Śrī Kṛṣṇa and Arjuna, ends the sixth chapter entitled "The Yoga of Self-Control."



## Chapter VII

श्रीभगवानुवाच—

मय्यासक्तमनाः पार्थ योगं युञ्जन्मदाश्रयः ।

असंशयं समग्रं मां यथा ज्ञास्यसि तच्छृणु ॥ १ ॥

Śrī Bhagavān said:

Arjuna, now listen how with the mind attached to Me ( through exclusive love ) and practising Yoga with complete dependence on Me, you will know Me ( the repository of all power and glory,

## The Bhagavadgītā

the Soul of all ) in full and freed from all doubts. 1

ज्ञानं तेऽहं सविज्ञानमिदं वक्ष्याम्यशेषतः ।

यज्ज्ञात्वा नेह भूयोऽन्यज्ज्ञातव्यमवशिष्यते ॥ २ ॥

I shall unfold to you in its entirety this wisdom along with the real knowledge of manifest Divinity, having known which nothing else remains still to be known in this world. 2

मनुष्याणां सहस्रेषु कश्चिद्यतति सिद्धये ।

यततामपि सिद्धानां कश्चिन्मां वेत्ति तत्त्वतः ॥ ३ ॥

Of thousands of men some rare soul strives to realize Me; of those striving Yogis, again, some rare one (devoting himself exclusively to Me) knows Me in reality. 3

## Chapter VII

भूमिरापोऽनलो वायुः खं मनो बुद्धिरेव च ।  
अहंकार इतीयं मे भिन्ना प्रकृतिरष्टधा ॥ ४ ॥  
अपरेयमितस्त्वन्यां प्रकृतिं विद्धि मे पराम् ।  
जीवभूतां महाबाहो ययेदं धार्यते जगत् ॥ ५ ॥

Earth, water, fire, air, ether, mind, reason and also the ego—these constitute My nature eightfold divided. This is My lower (insentient) nature; the other than this, by which the whole universe is sustained, know it as My higher (or sentient) nature in the form of the Jiva ( the life-principle ). 4, 5

एतद्योनीनि भूतानि सर्वाणीत्युपधारय ।  
अहं कृत्स्नस्य जगतः प्रभवः प्रलयस्तथा ॥ ६ ॥

Arjuna, know that all beings have evolved from this twofold Prakṛti, and

## The Bhagavadgītā

that I am the source of the entire creation,  
and in Me again it dissolves. 6

मत्तः परतरं नान्यत्किञ्चिदस्ति धनंजय ।  
मयि सर्वमिदं प्रोतं सूत्रे मणिगणा इव ॥ ७ ॥

There is nothing else besides Me,  
Arjuna. Like clusters of yarn-beads  
formed by knots on a thread, all this is  
threaded on Me. 7

रसोऽहमप्सु कौन्तेय प्रभास्मि शशिसूर्ययोः ।  
प्रणवः सर्ववेदेषु शब्दः खे पौरुषं नृषु ॥ ८ ॥

Arjuna, I am the sapidity in water  
and the light of the moon and the sun;  
I am the sacred syllable Om in all the  
Vedas, sound in ether, and manliness  
in men. 8



## Chapter VII

पुण्यो गन्धः पृथिव्यां च तेजश्चास्मि विभावसौ ।

जीवनं सर्वभूतेषु तपश्चास्मि तपस्विषु ॥ ९ ॥

I am pure odour (the subtle principle of odour) in the earth and pure brilliance in fire; nay, I am life in all beings and austerity in ascetics. 9

बीजं मां सर्वभूतानां विद्धि पार्थ सनातनम् ।

बुद्धिर्बुद्धिमतामस्मि तेजस्तेजस्विनामहम् ॥ १० ॥

Arjuna, know Me as the eternal seed of all beings. I am the intelligence of the intelligent; the glory of the glorious am I. 10

बलं बलवतां चाहं कामरागविवर्जितम् ।

धर्माविरुद्धो भूतेषु कामोऽस्मि भरतर्षभ ॥ ११ ॥

Arjuna, I am the might of the mighty, free from passion and desire; in beings I

## The Bhagavadgītā

am the sexual desire not in conflict with virtue or scriptural injunction. 11

ये चैव सात्त्विका भावा राजसास्तामसाश्च ये ।  
मत्त एवेति तान्विद्धि न त्वहं तेषु ते मयि ॥ १२ ॥

Whatever other entities there are, born of Sattva (the quality of goodness), and those that are born of Rajas (the principle of activity) and Tamas (the principle of inertia), know them all as evolved from Me alone. In reality, however, neither I exist in them, nor they in Me. 12

त्रिभिर्गुणमयैर्भावैरेभिः सर्वमिदं जगत् ।  
मोहितं नाभिजानाति मामेभ्यः परमव्ययम् ॥ १३ ॥

The whole of this creation is deluded by objects evolved from the three modes

## Chapter VII

of Nature—Sattva, Rajas and Tamas; hence it does not know Me, who am above these and imperishable. 13

दैवी ह्येषा गुणमयी मम माया दुरत्यया ।  
मामेव ये प्रपद्यन्ते मायामेतां तरन्ति ते ॥१४॥

For this wonderful illusion of Mine consisting of the three Gunas ( modes of Nature) is extremely difficult to get over; those, however, who take refuge in Me alone cross it. 14

न मां दुष्कृतिनो मूढाः प्रपद्यन्ते नराधमाः ।  
माययापहतज्ञाना आसुरं भावमाश्रिताः ॥१५॥

Those who have their wisdom carried away by nescience, and who have embraced the demoniac nature, such

## The Bhagavadgītā

foolish and wretched men of evil deeds  
do not worship Me. 15

चतुर्विधा भजन्ते मां जनाः सुकृतिनोऽर्जुन ।

भार्तो जिज्ञासुरर्थार्थी शानी च भरतर्षभ ॥ १६ ॥

Four types of virtuous men worship  
Me, Arjuna,—the seeker of worldly  
objects, the sufferer, the seeker for know-  
ledge, and the man of wisdom. 16

तेषां ज्ञानी नित्ययुक्त एकभक्तिर्विशिष्यते ।

प्रियो हि ज्ञानिनोऽत्यर्थमहं स च मम प्रियः ॥ १७ ॥

Of these the best is the man of  
wisdom, constantly established in identity  
with Me and possessed of exclusive devo-  
tion. For extremely dear am I to the wise  
man (who knows Me in reality), and he  
is extremely dear to Me. 17



## Chapter VII

उदाराः सर्व एवैते ज्ञानी त्वात्मैव मे मतम् ।

आस्थितः स हि युक्तात्मा मामेवानुत्तमां गतिम् ॥१८॥

All these are noble, but the man of wisdom is verily My own self; this is My view. For this devotee, who has his mind and intellect merged in Me, is firmly established in Me, the highest goal. 18

बहूनां जन्मनामन्ते ज्ञानवान्मां प्रपद्यते ।

वासुदेवः सर्वमिति स महात्मा सुदुर्लभः ॥१९॥

In the very last of all births, the man of realization worships Me, realizing that all this is God. Such a great soul is very rare. 19

कामस्तैस्तैर्हृतज्ञानाः प्रपद्यन्तेऽन्यदेवताः ।

तं तं नियममास्थाय प्रकृत्या नियताः स्वया ॥२०॥

## The Bhagavadgita

Those whose wisdom has been carried away by various desires, being bound by their own nature, worship other gods undertaking vows relating to each. 20

यो यो यां यां तनुं भक्तः श्रद्धयार्चितुमिच्छति ।

तस्य तस्याचलां श्रद्धां तामेव विदधाम्यहम् ॥२१॥

Whatever celestial form a devotee ( craving for some worldly object ) seeks to worship with faith, I stabilize the faith of that particular devotee in that very form. 21

स तया श्रद्धया युक्तस्तस्याराधनमीहते ।

लभते च ततः कामन्मयैव विहितान्हि तान् ॥२२॥

Endowed with such faith he worships that deity and obtains through him with-

## Chapter VII

out doubt his desired enjoyment as  
ordained by Me. 22

अन्तवत्तु फलं तेषां तद्भवत्यल्पमेधसाम् ।  
देवान्देवयजो यान्ति मद्भक्ता यान्ति मामपि ॥ २३ ॥

The fruit gained by these people of  
meagre intelligence, however, is perish-  
able. The worshippers of gods attain the  
gods; whereas My devotees (howsoever  
they may adore Me), in the end attain  
Me alone. 23

अव्यक्तं व्यक्तिमापन्नं मन्यन्ते मामबुद्धयः ।  
परं भावमजानन्तो ममाव्ययमनुत्तमम् ॥ २४ ॥

Not knowing My unsurpassable and  
undecaying supreme nature, the unintell-  
igent think Me, the supreme Spirit  
beyond the reach of mind and senses,

## The Bhagavadgītā

the embodiment of Truth, Knowledge and Bliss, to have assumed a visible ( human ) form. 24

नाहं प्रकाशः सर्वस्य योगमायासमावृतः ।  
मूढोऽयं नाभिजानाति लोको मामजमव्ययम् ॥ २५ ॥

Veiled by My Yogamāyā ( divine potency ), I am not manifest to all. Hence these ignorant folk do not recognize Me as the unborn and imperishable Supreme Spirit ( i. e., take Me to be subject to birth and death ). 25

वेदाहं समतीतानि वर्तमानानि चार्जुन ।  
भविष्याणि च भूतानि मां तु वेद न कश्चन ॥ २६ ॥

Arjuna, I know all beings, past as well as present, nay, even those that are



## Chapter VII

yet to come; but none ( devoid of faith  
and reverence ) knows Me. 26

इच्छाद्वेषसमुत्थेन द्वन्द्वमोहेन भारत ।  
सर्वभूतानि सम्मोहं सर्गे यान्ति परंतप ॥२७॥

Arjuna, O chastiser of foes, in this  
world, through the delusion of pairs of  
opposites ( such as pleasure and pain ),  
born of desire and hatred, all beings are  
being enveloped in utter ignorance. 27

येषां त्वन्तगतं पापं जनानां पुण्यकर्मणाम् ।  
ते द्वन्द्वमोहनिर्मुक्ता भजन्ते मां दृढव्रताः ॥२८॥

But those men of virtuous deeds  
whose sins have come to an end, being  
freed from delusion in the shape of pairs

## The Bhagavadgītā

of opposites, worship Me with a firm resolve in every way. 28

जरामरणमोक्षाय मामाश्रित्य यतन्ति ये ।

ते ब्रह्म तद्विदुः कृत्स्नमध्यात्मं कर्म चाखिलम् ॥२९॥

साधिभूताधिदैवं मां साधियज्ञं च ये विदुः ।

प्रयाणकालेऽपि च मां ते विदुर्युक्तचेतसः ॥३०॥

They who, having taken refuge in Me, strive for deliverance from old age and death know Brahma ( the Infinite ), Adhyātmā ( the totality of Jivas or embodied souls ), and the entire field of Karma ( action ) as well as My integral being, comprising Adhibhūta ( the field of Matter ), Adhidaiva ( Brahmā ) and Adhiyajña ( the unmanifest Divinity dwelling in the heart of all beings as

## Chapter VII

their witness ). And they who, possessed of a steadfast mind, know Me even at the hour of death, they also know Me. 29, 30

ॐ तत्सदिति श्रीमद्भगवद्गीतासुपनिषत्सु ब्रह्मविद्यायां  
योगशास्त्रे श्रीकृष्णार्जुनसंवादे ज्ञानविज्ञान-  
योगो नाम सप्तमोऽध्यायः ॥ ७ ॥

Thus, in the Upaniṣad sung by the Lord, the science of Brahma, the scripture on Yoga, the dialogue between Śrī Kṛṣṇa and Arjuna, ends the seventh chapter entitled "The Yoga of Jñāna ( Knowledge of Nirguṇa Brahma ) and Vijñāna ( Knowledge of Manifest Divinity )."



## Chapter VIII

अर्जुन उवाच—

किं तद् ब्रह्म किमध्यात्मं किं कर्म पुरुषोत्तम ।  
अधिभूतं च किं प्रोक्तमधिदैवं किमुच्यते ॥ १ ॥

Arjuna said:

Kṛṣṇa, what is that Brahma, what is Adhyātmā, and what is Karma ( action ) ? What is called Adhibhūta and what is termed as Adhidaiva ? 1



## Chapter VIII

अधियज्ञः कथं कोऽत्र देहेऽस्मिन्मधुसूदन ।  
प्रयाणकाले च कथं ज्ञेयोऽसि नियतात्मभिः ॥ २ ॥

Kṛṣṇa, what is Adhiyajña here and how does it dwell in the body ? And how are You to be realized at the time of death by those of steadfast mind ? 2

श्रीभगवानुवाच—

अक्षरं ब्रह्म परमं स्वभावोऽध्यात्ममुच्यते ।  
भूतभावोद्भवकरो विसर्गः कर्मसंज्ञितः ॥ ३ ॥

Śrī Bhagavān said:

The Supreme Indestructible is Brahma; one's own self ( the Jivātmā ) is called Adhyātma; and the discharge of spirits ( Visarga ), which brings forth the existence of beings, is called Karma (action). 3

## The Bhagavadgītā

अधिभूतं क्षरो भावः पुरुषश्चाधिदैवतम् ।

अधियज्ञोऽहमेवात्र देहे देहभृतां वर ॥ ४ ॥

All perishable objects are Adhibhūta; the Puruṣa ( Brahma ) is Adhidaiva; and Arjuna, in this body I Myself, dwelling as the inner witness, am Adhiyajña. 4

अन्तकाले च मामेव स्मरन्मुक्त्वा कलेवरम् ।

यः प्रयाति स मद्भावं याति नास्त्यत्र संशयः ॥ ५ ॥

He who departs from the body, thinking of Me alone, even at the time of death, attains My state; there is no doubt about it. 5

यं यं वापि स्मरन्भावं त्यजत्यन्ते कलेवरम् ।

तं तमेवैति कौन्तेय सदा तद्भावभावितः ॥ ६ ॥

Arjuna, thinking of whatever object one leaves the body at the time of death,

## Chapter VIII

that and that alone he attains, being ever absorbed in its thought. (Generally, at the time of death, one is haunted by the thought of that object alone which has mostly engaged his mind during his lifetime; and as a rule, it is the predominating thought of his last moment that determines his future destiny. ) 6

तस्मात्सर्वेषु कालेषु मामनुस्मर युध्य च ।

मय्यर्पितमनोबुद्धिर्मा मेवैष्यस्य संशयम् ॥ ७ ॥

Therefore, Arjuna, think of Me at all times and fight. With mind and reason thus surrendered to Me, you will doubtless come to Me. 7

अभ्यासयोगयुक्तेन चेतसा नान्यगामिना ।

परमं पुरुषं दिव्यं याति पार्थानुचिन्तयन् ॥ ८ ॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

Arjuna, he who with his mind established in Yoga in the form of practice of meditation, and thinking of nothing else, is constantly engaged in contemplation of God, attains the supreme divine Puruṣa ( God ). 8

कविं पुराणमनुशासितार-  
मणोरणीयांसमनुस्मरेद्यः ।  
सर्वस्य धातारमचिन्त्यरूप-  
मादित्यवर्णं तमसः परस्तात् ॥ ९ ॥

He who contemplates on the all-wise eternal Being, the ruler of all, subtler than the subtle, the sustainer of all, possessing a Form beyond comprehension, shining like the sun and far beyond the darkness of ignorance. 9



## Chapter VIII

प्रयाणकाले. मनसाचलेन  
भक्त्या युक्तो योगबलेन चैव ।  
श्रुवोर्मध्ये प्राणमावेश्य सम्यक्  
स तं परं पुरुषमुपैति दिव्यम् ॥१०॥

Having by Yogic power firmly holding the life-breath in the space between the two eyebrows even at the time of death, and then contemplating on God with a steadfast mind, full of devotion, reaches verily that supreme divine Puruṣa (God). 10

यदक्षरं वेदविदो वदन्ति  
विशन्ति यद्यतयो वीतरागाः ।  
यदिच्छन्तो ब्रह्मचर्यं चरन्ति  
तत्ते पदं संग्रहेण प्रवक्ष्ये ॥११॥

I shall speak to you in brief of that supreme goal (God), which knowers

## The Bhagavadgītā

of the Vedas term as the Indestructible, which striving recluses free from attachment enter, and desiring which the celibates practise celibacy. 11

सर्वद्वाराणि संयम्य मनो हृदि निरुध्य च ।

मूर्ध्न्याधायात्मनः प्राणमास्थितो योगधारणाम् ॥

भोमित्येकाक्षरं ब्रह्म व्याहरन्मामनुस्मरन् ।

यः प्रयाति त्यजन्देहं स याति परमां गतिम् ॥ १३ ॥

Having restrained all the media of perception, and fixing the mind in the heart, and through the controlled mind fixing the life-breath in the head and remaining steadfast in Yogic concentration on God, he who leaves the body and departs, reciting the one-syllabled Brahma, Om, and dwelling on Me in

## Chapter VIII

My absolute aspect, attains the supreme state. 12, 13

अनन्यचेताः सततं यो मां स्मरति नित्यशः ।

तस्याहं सुलभः पार्थ नित्ययुक्तस्य योगिनः ॥ १४ ॥

Arjuna, he who always and constantly thinks of Me with undivided mind, to that Yogī always absorbed in Me, I am easily attainable. 14

मामुपेत्य पुनर्जन्म दुःखालयमशाश्वतम् ।

नाप्नुवन्ति महात्मानः संसिद्धिं परमां गताः ॥ १५ ॥

Great souls, who have attained highest perfection, having come to Me are no more subjected to rebirth, which is the abode of sorrow, and transitory by nature. 15

आब्रह्मभुवनाल्लोकाः पुनरावर्तिनोऽर्जुन ।

मामुपेत्य तु कौन्तेय पुनर्जन्म न विद्यते ॥ १६ ॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

Arjuna, all the worlds from Brahma-loka ( the abode of Brahmā ) downwards are subject to appearance and disappearance. But, O son of Kuntī, on attaining Me there is no rebirth. ( For I am beyond Time, and regions like Brahmaloḥka, being subject to time, are impermanent. ) 16

सहस्रयुगपर्यन्तमहर्षद्ब्रह्मणो विदुः ।

रात्रिं युगसहस्रान्तां तेऽहोरात्रविदो जनाः ॥१७॥

Those who know from realization Brahmā's day as extending to a thousand Mahāyugas\*, and Brahmā's night as extending to another thousand Mahāyugas, they alone know the reality about Time. 17

---

\* A Mahāyuga comprises the Yugas, viz., Kṛta, Tretā, Dwāpara and Kali.



## Chapter VIII

अव्यक्ताद्व्यक्तयः सर्वाः प्रभवन्त्यहरागमे ।

रात्र्यागमे प्रलीयन्ते तत्रैवाव्यक्तसंज्ञके ॥१८॥

All embodied beings emanate from the Unmanifest ( i. e., Brahma's subtle body) at the commencement of Brahmā's day; at the commencement of his night, they merge in the same subtle body of Brahmā, known as the Unmanifest. 18

भूतग्रामः स एवायं भूत्वा भूत्वा प्रलीयते ।

रात्र्यागमेऽवशः पार्थ प्रभवत्यहरागमे ॥१९॥

Arjuna, this multitude of beings, being born, again and again, under compulsion, from Prakṛti, is dissolved at the commencement of Brahmā's night, and rises again at the commencement of his day. 19

## The Bhagavadgītā

परस्तस्मात्तु भावोऽन्योऽव्यक्तोऽव्यक्तात्सनातनः ।  
यः स सर्वेषु भूतेषु नश्यत्सु न विनश्यति ॥२०॥

Beyond this Unmanifest, there is yet another eternal Unmanifest, that supremely Divine Substance, which does not perish even though all beings perish. 20

अव्यक्तोऽक्षर इत्युक्तस्तमाहुः परमां गतिम् ।  
यं प्राप्य न निवर्तन्ते तद्धाम परमं मम ॥२१॥

This Unmanifest, spoken of as the indestructible, is called the supreme Goal; that is My supreme Abode, attaining which man does not return. 21

पुरुषः स परः पार्थ भक्त्या लभ्यस्त्वनन्यया ।  
यस्यान्तःस्थानि भूतानि येन सर्वमिदं ततम् ॥२२॥

Arjuna, that supreme Puruṣa, in whom all beings reside, and by whom

## Chapter VIII

all this is pervaded, is attainable only  
by exclusive Devotion. 22

यत्र काले त्वनावृत्तिमावृत्तिं चैव योगिनः ।

प्रयाता यान्ति तं कालं वक्ष्यामि भरतर्षभ ॥२३॥

Arjuna, I shall now tell you the  
time ( path ) departing when Yogis do  
not return, and also the time ( path )  
departing when they do return. ( I shall  
describe to you both the paths. ) 23

अग्निर्ज्योतिरहःशुक्रः षण्मासा उत्तरायणम् ।

तत्र प्रयाता गच्छन्ति ब्रह्म ब्रह्मविदो जनाः ॥२४॥

( Of the two paths ) that in which  
are located the all-effulgent fire-god and  
the gods presiding over day-time, the  
bright fortnight, and the six months  
of the northward course of the sun,

## The Bhagavadgītā

proceeding along it after death, Yogis, who have known Brahma, are successively led by the above gods, and finally reach Brahma.

24

धूमो रात्रिस्तथा कृष्णः षण्मासा दक्षिणायनम् ।  
तत्र चान्द्रमसं ज्योतिर्योगी प्राप्य निवर्तते ॥ २५ ॥

Again, the path in which are located the gods presiding over smoke, night, the dark fortnight, and the six months of the southward course of the sun—the Yogī (devoted to action with a motive), taking to this path after death, is led by the above gods, one after another, and attaining the lustre of the moon (and enjoying the fruit of his meritorious deeds in heaven) returns to this mortal world.

25



## Chapter VIII

शुक्लकृष्णे गती ह्येते जगतः शाश्वते मते ।

एकया यात्यनावृत्तिमन्ययावर्तते पुनः ॥२६॥

These two paths of the world, the bright and the dark, are considered to be eternal. Proceeding by one of them, one reaches the supreme state from which there is no return: and proceeding by the other, one returns to the mortal world, and becomes subject to birth and death once more. 26

नैते सृती पार्थ जानन्योगी मुह्यति कश्चन ।

तस्मात्सर्वेषु कालेषु योगयुक्तो भवार्जुन ॥२७॥

Knowing thus the secret of these two paths, O son of Kunti, no Yogi gets deluded. Therefore, Arjuna, at all times be established in Yoga in the form of equanimity ( i. e. strive constantly for My realization ). 27

## The Bhagavadgītā

वेदेषु यज्ञेषु तपःसु चैव

दानेषु यत् पुण्यफलं प्रदिष्टम् ।

अत्येति तत्सर्वमिदं विदित्वा

योगी परं स्थानमुपैति चाद्यम् ॥२८॥

The Yogī, knowing this secret, doubtless transcends all the rewards, promised in the scriptures, of the study of the Vedas, and of the performance of sacrifices, austerities and charities, and attains the supreme eternal state. 28

ॐ तत्सदिति श्रीमद्भगवद्गीतासूपनिषत्सु ब्रह्मविद्यायां

योगशास्त्रे श्रीकृष्णार्जुनसंवादे अक्षरब्रह्म-

योगो नामाष्टमोऽध्यायः ॥ ८ ॥

Thus in the Upaniṣad sung by the Lord, the science of Brahma, the scripture on Yoga, the dialogue between Śrī Kṛṣṇa and Arjuna, ends the eighth chapter entitled "The Yoga of the Indestructible Brahma."

## Chapter IX

श्रीभगवानुवाच—

इदं तु ते गुह्यतमं प्रवक्ष्याम्यनसूयवे ।  
ज्ञानं विज्ञानसहितं यज्ज्ञात्वा मोक्षयसेऽशुभात् ॥१॥

Śri Bhagavān said:

To you, who are devoid of the  
carping spirit, I shall now unfold the  
knowledge of Nirguṇa Brahma along

## The Bhagavadgītā

with the knowledge of Sākāra Brahma, knowing which you will be freed from the evil of worldly existence. 1

राजविद्या राजगुह्यं पवित्रमिदमुत्तमम् ।

प्रत्यक्षावगमं धर्म्यं सुसुखं कर्तुमव्ययम् ॥ २ ॥

This knowledge (of both the Nirguṇa and Saguṇa aspects of Divinity) is a sovereign science, a sovereign secret, supremely holy, most excellent, directly enjoyable, attended with virtue, very easy to practise and imperishable. 2

अश्रद्धाऽनाः पुरुषा धर्मस्यास्य परंतप ।

अप्राप्य मां निवर्तन्ते मृत्युसंसारवर्त्मनि ॥ ३ ॥

Arjuna, people having no faith in this Dharma, failing to reach Me, revolve in the paths of the world of death. 3



## Chapter IX

मया ततमिदं सर्वं जगदव्यक्तमूर्तिना ।

मत्स्थानि सर्वभूतानि न चाहं तेष्ववस्थितः ॥ ४ ॥

All this is permeated by Me in My unmanifest aspect ( as ice by water ) and all beings abide in the idea within Me. Therefore, really speaking, I am not in them. 4

न च मत्स्थानि भूतानि पश्य मे योगमैश्वरम् ।

भूतभृन्न च भूतस्थो ममात्मा भूतभावनः ॥ ५ ॥

Nay, those beings abide not in Me; but look at the wonderful power of My divine Yoga, though the Sustainer and Creator of beings, My Self in reality dwells not in those beings. 5

यथाकाशस्थितो नित्यं वायुः सर्वत्रगो महान् ।

तथा सर्वाणि भूतानि मत्स्थानीत्युपधारय ॥ ६ ॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

Just as the extensive and all-pervading air ( which is born of ether ) always remains in ether, likewise know that all beings ( sprung as they are from My thought ) abide in Me. 6

सर्वभूतानि कौन्तेय प्रकृतिं यान्ति मामिकाम् ।

कल्पक्षये पुनस्तानि कल्पादौ विसृजाम्यहम् ॥ ७ ॥

Arjuna, at the end of every Kalpa ( Brahmā's day ) all beings enter My Prakṛti ( the Prime Cause ), and at the beginning of every Kalpa, I bring them forth again. 7

प्रकृतिं स्वामवष्टभ्य विसृजामि पुनः पुनः ।

भूतग्राममिमं कृत्स्नमवशं प्रकृतेर्वशात् ॥ ८ ॥

Laying hold of My Nature, I bring forth, again and again, ( according to their

## Chapter IX

respective Karma ) this whole multitude of beings subject to the influence of their own nature. 8

न च मां तानि कर्माणि निबद्धन्ति धनंजय ।

उदासीनवदासीनमसक्तं तेषु कर्मसु ॥ ९ ॥

Arjuna, those actions, however, do not bind Me, unattached as I am to those actions and remain indifferent. 9

मयाध्यक्षेण प्रकृतिः सूयते सचराचरम् ।

हेतुनानेन कौन्तेय जगद्विपरिवर्तते ॥ १० ॥

Arjuna, with Me as the supervisor, Nature brings forth the whole creation, both animate and inanimate; it is due to this cause that the wheel of Samsāra is revolving. 10

## The Bhagavadgītā

अवजानन्ति मां मूढा मानुषीं तनुमाश्रितम् ।

परं भावमजानन्तो मम भूतमहेश्वरम् ॥११॥

Fools, not knowing My supreme nature, think low of Me, the Lord of creation, who have put on the human body. ( That is, they take Me, who have appeared in human garb through My Yogamāyā for the deliverance of the world, to be an ordinary mortal. ) 11

मोघाशा मोघकर्माणो मोघज्ञाना विचेतसः ।

राक्षसीमासुरीं चैव प्रकृतिं मोहिनीं श्रिताः ॥१२॥

Those senseless persons with vain hopes, futile actions and fruitless knowledge have embraced a nature which is fiendish, demoniacal and delusive. 12



## Chapter IX

महात्मानस्तु मां पार्थ दैवीं प्रकृतिमाश्रिताः ।

भजन्त्यनन्यमनसो ज्ञात्वा भूतादिमव्ययम् ॥ १३ ॥

On the other hand, Arjuna, great souls, who possess a divine nature knowing Me as the prime cause of creation and imperishable, worship Me constantly with undivided mind. 13

सततं कीर्तयन्तो मां यतन्तश्च दृढव्रताः ।

नमस्यन्तश्च मां भक्त्या नित्ययुक्ता उपासते ॥ १४ ॥

Constantly chanting My names and glories and striving to attain Me, and bowing, again and again, to Me, those devotees of firm resolve, ever united with Me through meditation, worship Me with single-minded devotion. 14

## The Bhagavadgītā

ज्ञानयज्ञेन चाप्यन्ये यजन्तो मामुपासते ।

एकत्वेन पृथक्त्वेन बहुधा विश्वतोमुखम् ॥१५॥

Others(Jñānayogīs)betake themselves to Me through their offering of Knowledge, worshipping Me ( in My Absolute and formless aspect ) as their very Self; while still others worship Me in My Universal Form in many ways, taking Me to be diverse in diverse celestial forms. 15

अहं क्रतुरहं यज्ञः स्वधाहमहमौषधम् ।

मन्त्रोऽहमहमेवाज्यमहमग्निरहं हुतम् ॥१६॥

I am the Vedic ritual, I am the sacrifice, I am the offering to the departed, I am the herbage; I am the sacred formula, I am the clarified butter, I am the sacred fire, and I am verily the act of offering oblations into the fire. 16

## Chapter IX

पिताहमस्य जगतो माता धाता पितामहः।

वेद्यं पवित्रमोंकार ऋक्साम यजुरेव च ॥१७॥

I am the sustainer and ruler of this universe, its father, mother and grandfather, the knowable, the purifier, the sacred syllable Om, and the three Vedas—R̥k, Yajus and Sāma. 17

गतिर्भर्ता प्रभुः साक्षी निवासः शरणंसुहृत् ।

प्रभवः प्रलयः स्थानं निधानं बीजमन्ययम् ॥१८॥

I am the supreme goal, supporter, lord, witness, abode, refuge, disinterested friend, origin and end, the resting-place, the store-house ( in which all beings are merged at the time of universal destruction ), and the imperishable seed. 18

## The Bhagavadgītā

तपाम्यहमहं वर्षं निगृह्णाम्युत्सृजामि च ।

अमृतं चैव मृत्युश्च सदसच्चाहमर्जुन ॥१९॥

Arjuna, I radiate heat as the sun, and hold back as well as send forth showers. I am immortality as well as death; I am being and non-being both. 19

त्रैविद्या मां सोमपाः पूतपापा

यज्ञैरिष्ट्वा स्वर्गंति प्रार्थयन्ते ।

ते पुण्यमासाद्य सुरेन्द्रलोक-

मश्नन्ति दिव्यान्दिवि देवभोगान् ॥२०॥

Those who perform action with some interested motive as laid down in the three Vedas and drink the sap of Soma plant, and have thus been purged of sin, worshipping Me through sacrifices, seek access to heaven; attaining Indra's



## Chapter IX

paradise as the result of their good deeds, they enjoy the celestial pleasures in heaven. 20

ते तं भुक्त्वा स्वर्गलोकं विशालं

क्षीणे पुण्ये मर्त्यलोकं विशन्ति ।

एवं

त्रयीधर्ममनुप्रपन्ना

गतागतं कामकामा लभन्ते ॥२१॥

Having enjoyed the extensive heaven-world, they return to this world of mortals on the stock of their merits being exhausted. Thus taking recourse to action with interested motive enjoined by the three Vedas ( as the means of attaining heavenly bliss ), and seeking worldly enjoyments, they repeatedly come and go ( i. e., ascend heaven by virtue

## The Bhagavadgītā

of their meritorious deeds and return to earth when their fruit has been enjoyed ). 21

अनन्याश्चिन्तयन्तो मां ये जनाः पर्युपासते ।

तेषां नित्याभियुक्तानां योगक्षेमं वहाम्यहम् ॥ २२ ॥

Those devotees, however, who knowing no one else constantly think of Me, and worship Me in a disinterested way, to those ever united in thought with Me, I bring full security and personally attend to their needs. 22

येऽप्यन्यदेवता भक्ता यजन्ते श्रद्धयान्विताः ।

तेऽपि मामेव कौन्तेय यजन्त्यविधिपूर्वकम् ॥ २३ ॥

Arjuna, even those devotees who, endowed with faith, worship other gods ( with some interested motive ), they

## Chapter IX

too worship Me alone, though not in accordance with rules ( i. e., without proper knowledge ). 23

अहं हि सर्वयज्ञानां भोक्ता च प्रभुरेव च ।

न तु मामभिजानन्ति तत्त्वेनातश्च्यवन्ति ते ॥ २४ ॥

For I am the enjoyer and also the Lord of all sacrifices; but they do not know Me in reality ( as the Adhiyajña ), hence they fall ( are subjected to birth and death ). 24

यान्ति देवव्रता देवान्पितॄन्यान्ति पितृव्रताः ।

भूतानि यान्ति भूतेज्या यान्ति मद्याजिनोऽपि माम् २५

Those who take to the worship of gods go to the gods; those who worship the manes reach the manes; those who adore the spirits reach the

## The Bhagavadgītā

spirits and those who worship Me attain Me. ( That is why My devotees are not subjected to birth and death. ) 25

पत्रं पुष्पं फलं तोयं यो मे भक्त्या प्रयच्छति ।

तदहं भक्त्युपहृतमश्नामि प्रयतात्मनः ॥२६॥

Whosoever offers to Me with love a leaf, a flower, a fruit or even water. I appear in person before that disinterested devotee of purified intellect, and delightfully partake of that article offered by him with love. 26

यत्करोषि यदश्नासि यज्जुहोषि ददासि यत् ।

यत्तपस्यसि कौन्तेय तत्कुरुष्व मदर्पणम् ॥२७॥

Arjuna, whatever you do, whatever you eat, whatever you offer as oblation to the sacred fire, whatever you bestow



## Chapter IX

as a gift, whatever you do by way of penance, offer it all to Me. 27

शुभाशुभफलैरेवं मोक्ष्यसे कर्मबन्धनैः ।

संन्यासयोगयुक्तात्मा विमुक्तो मामुपैष्यसि ॥२८॥

With your mind thus established in the Yoga of Renunciation ( offering of all actions to Me ), you will be freed from the bonds of Karma in the shape of good and evil consequences; and freed from them, you shall attain Me. 28

समोऽहं सर्वभूतेषु न मे द्वेष्योऽस्ति न प्रियः ।

ये भजन्ति तु मां भक्त्या मयि ते तेषु चाप्यहम् ॥२९॥

I am equally present in all beings; there is none hateful or dear to Me. They, however, who devoutly worship Me abide in Me, and I also stand revealed in them. 29

## The Bhagavadgītā

अपि चेत्सुदुराचारो भजते मामनन्यभाक् ।  
साधुरेव स मन्तव्यः सम्यग्व्यवसितो हि सः ॥ ३० ॥

Even if the vilest sinner worships Me with exclusive devotion, he should be considered a saint; for he has rightly resolved. ( He is positive in his belief that there is nothing like devoted worship. ) 30

क्षिप्रं भवति धर्मात्मा शश्वच्छान्तिं निगच्छति ।  
कौन्तेय प्रति जानीहि न मे भक्तः प्रणश्यति ॥ ३१ ॥

Speedily he becomes virtuous and secures lasting peace. Know it for certain, Arjuna, that My devotee never falls. 31

मां हि पार्थ व्यपाश्रित्य येऽपि स्युः पापयोनयः ।  
स्त्रियो वैश्यास्तथा शूद्रास्तेऽपि यान्ति परां मतिम् ॥ ३२ ॥

## Chapter IX

Arjuna, womanfolk, Vaiśyas (members of the trading class), Śūdras (those belonging to the labouring class), and even those that are born of the womb of sin (such as the pariah) taking refuge in Me, they too attain the supreme goal. 32

किं पुनर्ब्राह्मणाः पुण्या भक्ता राजर्षयस्तथा ।

अनित्यमसुखं लोकमिमं प्राप्य भजस्व माम् ॥३३॥

What wonder, then, that the holy Brahmans (members of the intellectual or priestly class) and devout royal sages should attain it. Therefore, having obtained this joyless and transient human life, do you constantly worship Me. 33

## The Bhagavadgītā

मन्मना भव मद्भक्तो मद्याजी मां नमस्कुरु ।

मामेयैष्यसि युक्तत्वैवमात्मानं मत्परायणः ॥ ३४ ॥

Fix your mind on Me, be devoted to Me, adore Me and make obeisance to Me; thus uniting yourself to Me and entirely depending on Me, you shall come to Me.

34

ॐ तत्सदिति श्रीमद्भगवद्गीतासूपनिषत्सु ब्रह्मविद्यायां  
योगशास्त्रे श्रीकृष्णार्जुनसंवादे राजविद्याराजगुह्य-  
योगो नाम नवमोऽध्यायः ॥ ९ ॥

Thus, in the Upaniṣad sung by the Lord, the science of Brahma, the scripture on Yoga, the dialogue between Śrī Kṛṣṇa and Arjuna, ends the ninth chapter entitled "The Yoga of the Sovereign Science and the Sovereign Secret."



## Chapter X

श्रीभगवानुवाच—

भूय एव महाबाहो शृणु मे परमं वचः ।  
यत्तेऽहं प्रीयमाणाय वक्ष्यामि हितकाम्यया ॥ १ ॥

Sri Bhagavān said:

Arjuna, hear once again My supreme word, which I shall speak to you, who

## The Bhagavadgītā

are so loving, out of solicitude for your welfare. 1

न मे विदुः सुरगणाः प्रभवं न महर्षयः ।

अहमादिर्हि देवानां महर्षीणां च सर्वशः ॥ २ ॥

Neither gods nor the great sages know the secret of My birth (i. e. My appearance in human form out of mere sport); for I am the prime cause in all respects of gods as well as of the great seers. 2

यो मामजमनादिं च वेत्ति लोकमहेश्वरम् ।

असंमूढः स मर्त्येषु सर्वपापैः प्रमुच्यते ॥ ३ ॥

He who knows Me in reality as without birth and without beginning, and as the supreme Lord of the universe,

## Chapter X

he, undeluded among men, is purged  
of all sins. 3

बुद्धिर्ज्ञानमसंमोहः क्षमा सत्यं दमः शमः ।

सुखं दुःखं भवोऽभावो भयं चाभयमेव च ॥ ४ ॥

अहिंसा समता तुष्टिस्तपो दानं यशोऽयशः ।

भवन्ति भावा भूतानां मत्त एव पृथग्विधाः ॥ ५ ॥

Discrimination, true wisdom, sanity,  
forgiveness, truth, control over the senses  
and the mind, joy and sorrow, evolution  
and dissolution, fear and fearlessness,  
non-violence, equanimity, contentment,  
austerity, charity, fame and disrepute,—  
these diverse feelings of creatures  
emanate from Me alone. 4, 5

महर्षयः सप्त पूर्वे चत्वारो मनवस्तथा ।

मद्भावा मानसा जाता येषां लोक इमाः प्रजाः ॥ ६ ॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

The seven great seers ( Marichi and others ), the more ancient four ( Sanaka and others ), and the fourteen Manus ( progenitors of mankind ), who are all devoted to Me, are born of My will; of them all these creatures in the world were begotten. 6

एतां विभूतिं योगं च मम यो वेत्ति तत्त्वतः ।

सोऽविकम्पेन योगेन युज्यते नात्र संशयः ॥ ७ ॥

He who knows in reality this supreme glory and supernatural power of Mine gets established in Me through unwavering Devotion: of this there is no doubt. 7

अहं सर्वस्य प्रभवो मत्तः सर्वं प्रवर्तते ।

इति मत्वा भजन्ते मां बुधा भावसमन्विताः ॥ ८ ॥

I am the source of all creation; everything in the world moves because



## Chapter X

of Me; knowing thus the wise, full of devotion, worship Me. 8

मच्चित्ता मद्रूपप्राणा बोधयन्तः परस्परम् ।

कथयन्तश्च मां नित्यं तुष्यन्ति च रमन्ति च ॥ ९ ॥

With their mind fixed on Me, with their lives surrendered to Me, enlightening one another about My greatness and speaking of Me, they ever remain contented and take delight in Me. 9

तेषां सततयुक्तानां भजतां प्रीतिपूर्वकम् ।

ददामि बुद्धियोगं तं येन मामुपयान्ति ते ॥ १० ॥

On those ever united through meditation with Me and worshipping Me with love, I confer that Yoga of wisdom through which they attain Me. 10

## The Bhagavadgītā

तेषामेवानुकम्पार्थमहमज्ञानजं तमः ।

नाशयाम्यात्मभावस्थो ज्ञानदीपेन भास्वता ॥११॥

In order to shower My grace on them, I, dwelling in their heart, dispel the darkness born of ignorance by the shining light of wisdom. 11

अर्जुन उवाच—

परं ब्रह्म परं धाम पवित्रं परमं भवान् ।

पुरुषं शाश्वतं दिव्यमादिदेवमजं विभुम् ॥१२॥

आहुस्त्वामृषयः सर्वे देवर्षिर्नारदस्तथा ।

असितो देवलो व्यासः स्वयं चैव ब्रवीषि मे ॥१३॥

Arjuna said:

You are the supreme Eternal, the ultimate resort, the greatest purifier; all the seers speak of You as the eternal divine Person, the prime Deity, unborn and all-pervading. Likewise speak the

## Chapter X

celestial sage Nārada, the sages Asita and Devala and the great sage Vyāsa; and so do You Yourself proclaim this to me. 12, 13

सर्वमेतद्वत् मन्वे यन्मां वदसि केशव ।  
न हि ते भगवन्व्यक्तिं विदुर्देवा न दानवाः ॥१४॥

Kṛṣṇa, I believe as true all that You tell me. Lord, neither gods nor the demons are aware of Your manifestation through Līlā (sport). 14

स्वयमेवात्मनाऽऽत्मानं वेत्थ त्वं पुरुषोत्तम ।  
भूतभावन भूतेश देवदेव जगत्पते ॥१५॥

O Creator of beings, O Ruler of creatures, God of gods, the Lord of the universe, O supreme Puruṣa, Yourself alone know Yourself through Yourself. 15

## The Bhagavadgītā

वक्तुमर्हस्यशेषेण दिव्या ह्यात्मविभूतयः ।

याभिर्विभूतिभिर्लोकानिमांस्त्वं व्याप्य तिष्ठसि ॥ १६ ॥

You alone can describe in full Your  
divine glories whereby You stand  
pervading these worlds. 16

कथं विद्यामहं योगिस्त्वां सदा परिचिन्तयन् ।

केषु केषु च भावेषु चिन्त्योऽसि भगवन्मया ॥ १७ ॥

O Master of Yoga, how am I to  
know You through constant meditation ?  
And in what particular forms, O Lord,  
are You to be meditated upon by me ? 17

विस्तरेणात्मनो योगं विभूतिं च जनार्दन ।

भूयः कथय तृप्तिर्हि शृण्वतो नास्ति मेऽमृतम् ॥ १८ ॥

Kṛṣṇa, tell me once more, in detail,  
Your power of Yoga and Your glory;  
for I know no satiety in hearing Your  
nectarean words. 18



## Chapter X

श्रीभगवानुवाच—

हन्त ते कथयिष्यामि दिव्या ह्यात्मविभूतयः ।

प्राधान्यतः कुरुश्रेष्ठ नास्त्यन्तो विस्तरस्य मे ॥१९॥

Sri Bhagavān said:

Arjuna, now I shall tell you My conspicuous divine glories; for there is no limit to My magnitude. 19

अहमात्मा गुडाकेश सर्वभूताशयस्थितः ।

अहमादिश्च मध्यं च भूतानामन्त एव च ॥२०॥

Arjuna, I am the Self seated in the heart of all beings; so I am the beginning and middle and also the end of all beings. 20

आदित्यानामहं विष्णुर्ज्योतिषां रविरंशुमान् ।

मरीचिर्मरुतामसि नक्षत्राणामहं शशी ॥२१॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

I am Viṣṇu among the twelve sons of Aditi, and the bright-rayed sun among the luminaries; I am the glory of the Maruts ( the forty-nine wind-gods ), and the moon among stars. 21

वेदानां सामवेदोऽस्मि देवानामस्मि वासवः ।

इन्द्रियाणां मनश्चास्मि भूतानामस्मि चेतना ॥२२॥

Among the Vedas, I am the Sāmaveda; among the gods, I am Indra. Among the senses, I am the mind; and I am the consciousness (life-energy) in living beings. 22

रुद्राणां शङ्करश्चास्मि वित्तेशो यक्षरक्षसाम् ।

वसूनां पावकश्चास्मि मेरुः शिखरिणामहम् ॥२३॥

Among the eleven Rudras ( gods of destruction ), I am Śankara: and

## Chapter X

among the Yakṣas and Rākṣasas, the god of riches ( Kubera ). Among the eight Vasus ( a particular class of gods ), I am the God of fire; and among the mountains, I am the Meru. 23

पुरोधसां च मुख्यं मां विद्धि पार्थ बृहस्पतिम् ।  
सेनानीनामहं स्कन्दः सरसामसि सागरः ॥ २४ ॥

Among priests, Arjuna, know Me to be their chief, Bṛhaspati. Among generals, I am Skanda ( the generalissimo of the gods ); among the seats of water, I am the ocean. 24

महर्षीणां भृगुरहं गिरामस्येकमक्षरम् ।  
यज्ञानां जपयज्ञोऽसि स्थावराणां हिमालयः ॥ २५ ॥

Among the great seers, I am Bhṛgu; among words, I am the monosyllabic

## The Bhagavadgītā

Om. Among sacrifices, I am the sacrifice consisting of Japa ( muttering of sacred formulae ); among the immovables, the Himālaya. 25

अश्वत्थः सर्ववृक्षाणां देवर्षीणां च नारदः ।  
गन्धर्वाणां चित्ररथः सिद्धानां कपिलो मुनिः॥ २६॥

Among all trees, I am the Aśwattha ( the holy fig tree ); among the celestial sages, Nārada; among the Gandharvas ( celestial songsters ), Chitraratha; among the Siddhas, the sage Kapila. 26

उच्चैःश्रवसमश्वानां विद्धि माममृतोद्भवम् ।  
ऐरावतं गजेन्द्राणां नराणां च नराधिपम् ॥ २७॥

Among horses, know Me to be Uchchaiṣravā begotten of the churning of the ocean along with nectar; among



## Chapter X

mighty elephants, Airāvata (Indrā's elephant); among men, the king. 27

आयुधानामहं वज्रं धेनूनामस्मि कामधुक् ।

प्रजनश्चास्मि कन्दर्पः सर्पाणामस्मि वासुकिः ॥२८॥

Among weapons, I am the thunder-bolt; among cows, I am the celestial cow Kāmadhenu. I am the sexual desire which is attended by procreation, among serpents, I am Vāsuki. 28

अनन्तश्चास्मि नागानां वरुणो यादसामहम् ।

पितॄणामर्यमा चास्मि यमः संयमतामहम् ॥२९॥

Among Nāgas ( a special class of serpents ), I am Ananta ( the serpent-god ), and among aquatic creatures and water-gods, I am Varuṇa; among the manes, I am Aryamā, and among rulers, I am Yama ( the god of death ). 29

## The Bhagavadgītā

प्रह्लादश्चास्मि दैत्यानां कालः कलयतामहम् ।

मृगाणां च मृगेन्द्रोऽहं वैनतेयश्च पक्षिणाम् ॥३०॥

Among the Daityas ( demons ), I  
am Prahlāda; and among calculators,  
I am Time. So among quadrupeds,  
I am the lion; and among birds. Garuḍa  
( the vehicle of Viṣṇu ). 30

पवनः पवतामस्मि रामः शस्त्रभृतामहम् ।

झषाणां मकरश्चास्मि स्रोतसामस्मि जाह्नवी ॥३१॥

Among purifiers, I am the wind;  
among wielders of weapon, I am Rāma.  
Among fishes, I am the alligator; and  
among rivers, I am the Ganges. 31

सर्गाणामादिरन्तश्च मध्यं चैवाहमर्जुन ।

अध्यात्मविद्या विद्यानां वादः प्रवदतामहम् ॥३२॥

Arjuna, I am the beginning and  
the middle and the end of all creations.

## Chapter X

Of sciences, I am the science of the Soul ( metaphysics ); in disputants, I am the right type of reasoning. 32

अक्षराणामकारोऽस्मि द्वन्द्वः सामासिकस्य च ।

अहमेवाक्षयः कालो धाताहं विश्वतोमुखः ॥३३॥

Among the letters, I am 'A' ( the first letter of the alphabet ); of the different kinds of compounds in grammar. I am the copulative compound. I am verily the endless Time ( the devourer of Time, God ); I am the sustainer of all, having My face on all sides. 33

मृत्युः सर्वहरश्चाहमुद्भवश्च भविष्यताम् ।

कीर्तिः श्रीर्वाक्च नारीणां स्मृतिर्मेधा धृतिः क्षमा ३४

Again, I am the all-destroying Death, as also the source of future beings; of

## The Bhagavadgītā

women, I am the goddesses presiding over fame, prosperity, speech, memory, intelligence, steadfastness and forgiveness. 34

बृहत्साम तथा साम्नां गायत्री छन्दसामहम् ।

मासानां मार्गशीर्षोऽहमृतूनां कुसुमाकरः ॥३५॥

Likewise among the Sāma hymns, I am Bṛhatsāma; among the various Vedic verses, I am the Gāyatrī verse. Among the twelve months of the Hindu calendar, I am Mārgaśīrṣa; among seasons, the vernal season. 35

धूतं छलयतामस्मि तेजस्तेजस्विनामहम् ।

जयोऽस्मि व्यवसायोऽस्मि सत्त्वं सत्त्वतामहम् ३६

In those practising fraud, I am gambling; I am the glory of the glorious. I am the victory of the victorious. I



## Chapter X

am the resolution of the resolute; I am  
the goodness of the good-natured. 36

वृष्णीनां वासुदेवोऽस्मि पाण्डवानां धनंजयः ।

मुनीनामप्यहं व्यासः कवीनामुशना कविः ॥ ३७ ॥

Among the members of the Vṛṣṇi  
clan, I am your friend Kṛṣṇa; among  
the Pāṇḍavas, I am yourself. Among  
the sages, again, I am Vyāsa; among the  
wise, I am the sage Śukra, 37

दण्डो दमयतामस्मि नीतिरस्मि जिगीषताम् ।

मौनं चैवास्मि गुह्यानां ज्ञानं ज्ञानवतामहम् ॥ ३८ ॥

I am the ruling power in rulers;  
I am righteousness in those aspiring  
for victory. Of secrets, I am the  
custodian in the shape of silence; I am  
the wisdom of the wise. 38

## The Bhagavadgītā

यच्चापि सर्वभूतानां बीजं तदहमर्जुन ।

न तदस्ति बिना यत्स्यान्मया भूतं चराचरम् ॥३९॥

Arjuna, I am even that which is the seed of all beings. For there is no creature, animate or inanimate, which exists without Me. 39

नान्तोऽस्ति मम दिव्यानां विभूतीनां परंतप ।

एष तूद्देशतः प्रोक्तो विभूतेर्विस्तरो मया ॥४०॥

Arjuna, of My divine glories there is no end. This is only a brief description by Me of the extent of My powers. 40

यद्यद् विभूतिमत्सत्त्वं श्रीमदूर्जितमेव वा ।

तत्तदेवावगच्छ त्वं मम तेजोऽशसंभवम् ॥४१॥

Every such creature as is glorious, brilliant or powerful, know that to be

## Chapter X

a manifestation of a spark of My  
effulgence. *extremely bright.* 41

अथवा बहुनैतेन किं ज्ञातेन तवार्जुन ।

विष्टभ्याहमिदं कृत्स्नमेकांशेन स्थितो जगत् ॥४२॥

Or, what will you gain by knowing  
all this in detail, Arjuna? Suffice it to  
say that I stand holding this entire  
universe by a spark of My Yogic power. 42

ॐ तत्सदिति श्रीमद्भगवद्गीतासुपनिषत्सु ब्रह्म-

विद्यायां योगशास्त्रे श्रीकृष्णार्जुनसंवादे विभूति-

योगो नाम दशमोऽध्यायः ॥ १० ॥

Thus, in the Upaniṣad sung by the Lord, the  
science of Brahma, the scripture on Yoga, the  
dialogue between Śrī Kṛṣṇa and Arjuna,  
ends the tenth chapter entitled  
“The Yoga of Divine Glories.”

## Chapter XI

अर्जुन उवाच—

मदनुग्रहाय परमं गुह्यमध्यात्मसंज्ञितम् ।  
यत्स्वयोक्तं वचस्तेन मोहोऽयं विगतो मम ॥ १ ॥

Arjuna said:

The most secret word of spiritual wisdom that have been spoken by You as an act of kindness to me, thanks



## Chapter XI

to them this delusion of mine has disappeared. 1

भवाप्ययौहि भूतानां श्रुतौ विस्तरशो मया ।

त्वत्तः कमलपत्राक्ष माहात्म्यमपि चाव्ययम् ॥ २ ॥

For, Śrī Kṛṣṇa, I have heard from You in detail an account of the evolution and dissolution of beings, and also Your immortal glory. 2

एवमेतद्यथात्थ त्वमात्मानं परमेश्वर ।

द्रष्टुमिच्छामि ते रूपमैश्वरं पुरुषोत्तम ॥ ३ ॥

Lord, You are precisely what You declare Yourself to be. But I long to see Your divine form, O best of persons. 3

मन्यसे यदि तच्छक्यं मया द्रष्टुमिति प्रभो ।

योगेश्वर ततो मे त्वं दर्शयात्मानमव्ययम् ॥ ४ ॥

## The Bhagavadgita

Śrī Kṛṣṇa, if You consider me as capable of beholding it, then, O Lord of Yoga, reveal to me Your imperishable form. 4

श्रीभगवानुवाच—

पश्य मे पार्थ रूपाणि शतशोऽथ संहस्रशः ।

नानाविधानि दिव्यानि नानावर्णाकृतीनि च ॥ ५ ॥

Śrī Bhagavān said:

Arjuna, behold presently in hundreds and thousands My multifarious divine forms, of diverse colours and different shapes. 5

पश्यादित्यान्वसून् रुद्रानश्विनौ मरुतस्तथा ।

बहून्यदृष्टपूर्वाणि पश्याश्चर्याणि भारत ॥ ६ ॥

Behold in Me, Arjuna, the twelve sons of Aditi, the eight Vasus, the eleven

## Chapter XI

Rudras ( gods of destruction ), the two Aświnikumāras ( the twin-born physicians of gods ) and the forty-nine Maruts ( wind-gods ), and see many more wonderful forms never seen before. 6

इहैकस्थं जगत्कृत्स्नं पश्याद्य सचराचरम् ।

मम देहे गुडाकेश यच्चान्यद्द्रष्टुमिच्छसि ॥ ७ ॥

Arjuna, behold in this body of Mine, comprised in one limb, the entire creation both animate and inanimate and whatever else you desire to see. 7

न तु मां शक्यसे द्रष्टुमनेनैव स्वचक्षुषा ।

दिव्यं ददामि ते चक्षुः पश्य मे योगमैश्वरम् ॥ ८ ॥

But surely you cannot see Me with these gross eyes of yours; there-

## The Bhagavadgītā

fore I vouchsafe to you the divine eye,  
with this you behold My divine power  
of Yoga. 8

संजय उवाच—

एवमुक्त्वा ततो राजन्महायोगेश्वरो हरिः ।  
दर्शयामास पार्थाय परमं रूपमैश्वरम् ॥ ९ ॥

Sañjaya said:

My lord ! Śrī Kṛṣṇa, the supreme  
Master of Yoga, having said thus, then  
revealed to Arjuna His supreme divine  
Form. 9

अनेकवक्त्रनयनमनेकाद्भुतदर्शनम् ।  
अनेकदिव्याभरणं दिव्यानेकोद्यतायुधम् ॥ १० ॥  
दिव्यमाल्याम्बरधरं दिव्यगन्धानुलेपनम् ।  
सर्वाश्चर्यमयं देवमनन्तं विश्वतोमुखम् ॥ ११ ॥



## Chapter XI

Arjuna saw the supreme Deity possessing many mouths and eyes, presenting many a wonderful sight, decked with many divine ornaments, wielding many uplifted divine weapons, wearing divine garlands and clothes, beameared all over with divine sandal pastes, full of all wonders, infinite and having faces on all sides. 10, 11

दिवि सूर्यसहस्रस्य भवेद्युगपदुत्थिता ।

यदि भाः सदृशी सा स्याद्भासस्तस्य महात्मनः । १२ ।

If there be the effulgence of a thousand suns bursting forth all at once in the heavens, even that would hardly approach the splendour of the mighty Lord. 12

## The Bhagavadgītā

तत्रैकस्थं जगत्कृत्स्नं प्रविभक्तमनेकधा ।

अपश्यद्देवदेवस्य शरीरे पाण्डवस्तदा ॥१३॥

Arjuna, then, saw in the person of that supreme Deity, comprised in one limb, the whole universe with its manifold divisions. 13

ततः स विस्मयाविष्टो हृष्टरोमा धनंजयः ।

प्रणम्य शिरसा देवं कृताञ्जलिरभाषत ॥१४॥

Then, Arjuna, full of wonder and with the hairs standing on end, bowed his head to the divine Lord and with joined palms addressed Him thus. 14

अर्जुन उवाच—

पश्यामि देवांस्तव देव देहे

सर्वास्तथा भूतविशेषसङ्घान् ।

ब्रह्माणमीशं कमलासनस्थ-

मृषींश्च सर्वानुरगांश्च दिव्यान् ॥१५॥

## Chapter XI

Arjuna said:

Lord, I behold in Your body all gods and multitudes of different beings, Brahmā perched on his lotus-seat, Śiva and all Ṛṣis and celestial serpents. 15

अनेकबाहूदरवक्त्रनेत्रं

पश्यामि त्वां सर्वतोऽनन्तरूपम् ।

नान्तं न मध्यं न पुनस्तवादिं

पश्यामि विश्वेश्वर विश्वरूप ॥१६॥

O Lord of the universe, I see You endowed with numerous arms, bellies, faces and eyes and having infinite forms extended on all sides. O Form Universal, I see neither Your beginning nor middle nor end. 16

## The Bhagavadgītā

किरीटिनं गदिनं चक्रिणं च

तेजोराशिं सर्वतो दीप्तिमन्तम् ।

पश्यामि त्वां दुर्निरीक्ष्यं समन्ता-

द्दीप्तानलार्कद्युतिमप्रमेयम् ॥१७॥

I see You endowed with a diadem, mace and circular weapon ( Chakra ), a mass of splendour shining all round, having a brilliance like that of blazing fire and sun, dazzling and immeasurable on all sides. 17

त्वमक्षरं परमं वेदितव्यं

त्वमस्य विश्वस्य परं निधानम् ।

त्वमव्ययः शाश्वतधर्मगोप्ता

सनातनस्त्वं पुरुषो मतो मे ॥१८॥

You are the supreme Indestructible worthy of being realized; You are the ultimate resort of this universe. You



## Chapter XI

are the protector of eternal Dharma;  
I consider You to be the eternal,  
imperishable Being. 18

अनादिमध्यान्तमनन्तवीर्य-

मनन्तबाहुं शशिसूर्यनेत्रम् ।

पश्यामि त्वां दीप्तहुताशवक्त्रं

स्वतेजसा विश्वमिदं तपन्तम् ॥१९॥

I see You without beginning, middle  
or end, possessing unlimited prowess and  
endowed with numberless hands, having  
the moon and the sun for Your eyes, and  
blazing fire for Your mouth, and scorch-  
ing this universe by Your radiance. 19

द्यावापृथिव्योरिदमन्तरं हि

व्याप्तं त्वयैकेन दिशश्च सर्वाः ।

इष्टाद्भुतं रूपमुग्रं तवेदं

लोकत्रयं प्रव्यथितं महात्मन् ॥२०॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

Yonder space between heaven and earth and all the quarters are filled by You alone. Seeing this marvellous, dreadful Form of Yours, O mighty Lord, all the three worlds feel greatly alarmed. 20

अमी हि त्वां सुरसङ्घा विशन्ति

केचिद्धीताः प्राञ्जलयो गृणन्ति ।

स्वस्तीत्युक्त्वा महर्षिसिद्धसङ्घाः

स्तुवन्ति त्वां स्तुतिभिः पुष्कलाभिः ॥ २१ ॥

Those hosts of gods are entering You; some with palms joined out of fear are chanting Your names and glories. Hosts of Maharṣis and Siddhas saying, 'Let there be peace,' are extolling You by means of the very best praises. 21

## Chapter XI

रुद्रादित्या वसवो ये च साध्या

विश्वेऽश्विनौ मरुतश्चोष्मपाश्च ।

गन्धर्वयक्षासुरसिद्धसङ्घा

वीक्षन्ते त्वां विस्मिताश्चैव सर्वे ॥२२॥

The eleven Rudras, twelve Ādityas, eight Vasus, Sādhyas, Viśwedevas, the two Aświnīkumāras, forty-nine Maruts, manes and multitudes of Gandharvas, Yakṣas, Asuras and Siddhas, all are looking at You utterly amazed. 22

रूपं महत्ते बहुवक्त्रनेत्रं

महाबाहो बहुबाहुरूपादम् ।

बहुदरं बहुदंष्ट्राकरालं

दृष्ट्वा लोकाः प्रव्यथितास्तथाहम् ॥२३॥

Lord, seeing this vast and terrible Form of Yours, possessing numerous

## The Bhagavadgītā

faces and eyes, many arms, thighs and feet, many bellies and many teeth, the worlds are terrified; so am I. 23

नभःस्पृशं दीप्तमनेकवर्णं

व्यात्ताननं दीप्तविशालनेत्रम् ।

दृष्ट्वा हि त्वां प्रव्यथितान्तरात्मा

धृतिं न विन्दामि शमं च विष्णो ॥२४॥

Lord, seeing Your Form reaching the heavens, effulgent, many-coloured, having its mouth wide open and possessing large shining eyes, I, with my inner self frightened, have lost self-control and find no peace. 24

दंष्ट्राकरालानि च ते मुखानि

दृष्ट्वैव कालानलसन्निभानि ।

दिशो न जाने न लभे च शर्म

प्रसीद देवेश जगन्निवास ॥२५॥



## Chapter XI

Seeing Your faces with fearful  
teeth, resembling the raging fire at the  
time of universal destruction, I am  
utterly bewildered, and find no happiness;  
therefore, be kind to me, O Lord of  
celestials and Abode of the universe. 25

अमी च त्वां धृतराष्ट्रस्य पुत्राः  
सर्वे सहैवावनिपालसङ्घैः ।  
भीष्मो द्रोणः सूतपुत्रस्तथासौ  
सहास्रदीयैरपि योधमुख्यैः ॥२६॥  
वक्त्राणि ते त्वरमाणा विशन्ति  
दंष्ट्राकरालानि भयानकानि ।  
केचिद्विलग्ना दशनान्तरेषु  
संदृश्यन्ते चूर्णितैरुत्तमाङ्गैः ॥२७॥

All those sons of Dhṛtarāṣṭra with  
hosts of kings are entering You.

## The Bhagavadgītā

Bhīṣma, Drona and yonder Karna, with the principal warriors on our side as well, are rushing headlong into Your fearful mouths set with terrible teeth; some are seen stuck up between Your teeth with their heads crushed. 26, 27

यथा नदीनां बहवोऽम्बुवेगाः

समुद्रमेवाभिमुखा द्रवन्ति ।

तथा तवामी नरलोकवीरा

विशन्ति वक्त्राण्यभिविज्वलन्ति ॥२८॥

As the diverse streams of rivers rush towards the sea alone, so those warriors of the mortal world are entering Your blazing mouths. 28

यथा प्रदीप्तं ज्वलनं पतङ्गा

विशन्ति नाशाय समृद्धवेगाः ।

तथैव नाशाय विशन्ति लोका-

स्तत्रापि वक्त्राणि समृद्धवेगाः ॥२९॥

## Chapter XI

As moths rush with great speed into the blazing fire for destruction, even so all these people are with great rapidity entering Your mouths for destruction. 29

लेलिह्यसे ग्रसमानः समन्ता-

लोकान्समग्रान्वदनैर्ज्वलद्भिः ।

तेजोभिरापूर्य जगत्समग्रं

भासस्तवोग्राः प्रतपन्ति विष्णो ॥ ३० ॥

Swallowing through Your burning mouths, You are licking all those people on all sides. Lord, Your terrible brilliance is burning the entire universe, filling it with radiance. 30

आख्याहि मे को भवानुग्ररूपो

नमोऽस्तु ते देववर प्रसीद ।

विज्ञातुमिच्छामि भवन्तमाद्यं

न हि प्रजानामि तव प्रवृत्तिम् ॥ ३१ ॥

UNIT-01 circular measure

## The Bhagavadgītā

Tell me who You are with a form so terrible. My obeisance to You, O supreme Deity; be kind. I wish to know You, the Primal Being, in essence; for I know not Your purpose. 31

श्रीभगवानुवाच—

कालोऽस्मि लोकक्षयकृत्प्रवृद्धो

लोकान्समाहर्तुमिह प्रवृत्तः ।

ऋतेऽपि त्वां न भविष्यन्ति सर्वे

येऽवस्थिताः प्रत्यनीकेषु योधाः ॥३२॥

Śrī Bhagavān said:

I am the inflamed Kāla (Time), the destroyer of the worlds. My purpose here is to destroy these people. Even without you all those warriors arrayed in the enemy's camp will not survive. 32



## Chapter XI

तस्मात्त्वमुत्तिष्ठ यशो लभस्व  
जित्वा शत्रून् भुङ्क्ष्व राज्यं समृद्धम् ।  
मयैवैते निहताः पूर्वमेव  
निमित्तमात्रं भव सव्यसाचिन् ॥३३॥

Therefore, do you arise and win glory; conquering foes, enjoy the affluent kingdom. These warriors stand already slain by Me; be you only an instrument, Arjuna. 33

द्रोणं च भीष्मं च जयद्रथं च  
कर्णं तथान्यानपि योधवीरान् ।  
मया हतांस्त्वं जहि मा व्यथिष्ठा  
युध्यस्व जेतासि रणे सपत्नान् ॥३४॥

Do you kill Drona and Bhishma and Jayadratha and Karṇa and other brave warriors, who stand already killed

## The Bhagavadgītā

by Me; fear not. You will surely conquer the enemies in this war; therefore fight. 34

संजय उवाच—

एतच्छ्रुत्वा वचनं केशवस्य

कृताञ्जलिवेपमानः किरीटी ।

नमस्कृत्वा भूय एवाह कृष्णं

सगद्गदं भीतभीतः प्रणम्य ॥३५॥

Saṁjaya said:

Hearing these words of Bhagavān Keśava, Arjuna tremblingly bowed to Him with joined palms, and bowing again in extreme terror spoke to Śrī Kṛṣṇa in a faltering voice. 35

## Chapter XI

अर्जुन उवाच—

स्थाने हृषीकेश तव प्रकीर्त्या  
जगत्प्रहृष्यत्यनुरज्यते च ।  
रक्षांसि भीतानि दिशो द्रवन्ति  
सर्वे नमस्यन्ति च सिद्धसङ्घाः ॥३६॥

Arjuna said:

Lord, it is but meet that the universe exults and is filled with love by chanting Your names and glory; terrified Rākṣasas are fleeing in all directions, and all the hosts of Siddhas are bowing to You. 36

कस्माच्च ते न नमेरन्महात्मन्  
गरीयसे ब्रह्मणोऽप्यादिकर्त्रे ।  
अनन्त देवेश जगन्निवास  
त्वमक्षरं सदसत्तत्परं यत् ॥३७॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

O noble soul, why should they not bow to You, who are the progenitor of Brahmā himself and the greatest of the great ? O infinite Lord of celestials, Abode of the universe, You are that which is existent ( Sat ) and that which is non-existent ( Asat ), and also that which is beyond both, viz., the indestructible Brahma. 37

त्वमादिदेवः पुरुषः पुराण-

स्त्वमस्य विश्वस्य परं निधानम् ।

वेत्तासि वेद्यं च परं च धाम

त्वया ततं विश्वमनन्तरूप ॥३८॥

You are the prime Deity, the most ancient Person, You are the ultimate resort of this universe. You are both



## Chapter XI

the knower and the knowable, and the highest abode. It is You who pervade the universe, assuming endless forms. 38

वायुर्यमोऽग्निर्वरुणः शशङ्कः

प्रजापतिस्त्वं प्रपितामहश्च ।

नमो नमस्तेऽस्तु सहस्रकृत्वः

पुनश्च भूयोऽपि नमो नमस्ते ॥३९॥

You are Vāyu (Wind-god), Yama (God of death ), Agni ( Fire-god ), Moon-god, Brahmā, the Creator of beings, nay, the father of Brahmā himself. Obeisance, obeisance to You a thousand times; salutations, O salutations to You, again and again.

39

## The Bhagavadgītā

नमः पुरस्तादथ पृष्ठतस्ते  
नमोऽस्तु ते सर्वत एव सर्व ।  
अनन्तवीर्यामितविक्रमस्त्वं  
सर्वं समामोषि ततोऽसि सर्वः ॥४०॥

O Lord of infinite prowess, my salutations to You from before and from behind. O soul of all, my obeisance to You from all sides. You, who possess limitless might, pervade all; therefore, You are all. 40

सखेति मत्वा प्रसभं यदुक्तं  
हे कृष्ण हे यादव हे सखेति ।  
अजानता महिमानं तवेदं  
मया प्रमादात्प्रणयेन वापि ॥४१॥

## Chapter XI

यच्चावहासार्थमसत्कृतोऽसि

विहारशय्यासनभोजनेषु ।

एकोऽथवाप्यच्युत तत्समक्षं

तत्क्षामये त्वामहमप्रमेयम् ॥४२॥

Ignorant of this greatness of Yours, and thinking You only to be a friend, the way in which I have wantonly addressed You, either through heedlessness or even affection, as 'Kṛṣṇa', 'Yādava', 'Friend' and so on, and the way in which You have been slighted by me in jest while playing, reposing in bed, sitting or dining, either alone or in the presence of others—I crave forgiveness for all that from You, who are infinite, O infallible Lord.

41, 42

## The Bhagavadgītā

पितासि लोकस्य चराचरस्य  
त्वमस्य पूज्यश्च गुरुर्गरीयान् ।  
न त्वत्समोऽस्त्यभ्यधिकः कुतोऽन्यो  
लोकत्रयेऽप्यप्रतिमप्रभाव ॥४३॥

You are the Father, also, the greatest teacher of this animate and inanimate creation and supremely adorable. O Possessor of incomparable glory, in all the three worlds there is no one else equal to You; how can anyone be superior ?

43

तस्मात्प्रणम्य प्रणिधाय कायं  
प्रसादये त्वामहमीशमीड्यम् ।  
पितेव पुत्रस्य सखेव सख्युः  
प्रियः प्रियायार्हसि देव सोढुम् ॥४४॥



*To make favourable*

## Chapter XI

Therefore, Lord, laying my body <sup>To pass</sup>  
at Your feet and bowing low, I seek <sup>over</sup>  
to propitiate You, the ruler of all and <sup>welt-</sup>  
worthy of all praise. It behoves You <sup>out-</sup>  
to condone my fault even as a father <sup>claim</sup>  
condones the fault of his son, a friend  
that of his friend and the loving husband  
that of his beloved consort. *x Apart 44*

अदृष्टपूर्वं हृषितोऽस्मि दृष्ट्वा *A companion*  
भयेन च प्रव्यथितं मनो मे । *A wife*  
तदेव मे दर्शय देव रूपं *or husband*

प्रसीद देवेश जगन्निवास ॥४५॥

Having seen that which was unseen  
before, I feel delighted; at the same  
time my mind is tormented by fear.  
Pray reveal to me that divine form, the  
form of Viṣṇu with four arms. O Lord

*To put to  
extreme pain*

## The Bhagavadgītā

of celestials, Abode of the universe, be  
gracious. 45

किरीटिनं गदिनं चक्रहस्त-

मिच्छामि त्वां द्रष्टुमहं तथैव ।

तेनैव रूपेण चतुर्भुजेन

सहस्रबाहो भव विश्वमूर्ते ॥४६॥

*rown*  
*A*  
*METAL*  
*OR*  
*METAL*  
*radio*  
*war*  
*plate*  
*flex*  
*filled*  
I wish to see You adorned in the  
same way with a diadem on the head,  
and holding a mace and a circular  
weapon (Chakra) in two of Your hands.  
O Lord with a thousand arms, O all-  
formed one, appear again in the same  
four-armed Form. 46

श्रीभगवानुवाच—

मया प्रसन्नेन तवार्जुनेदं

रूपं परं दर्शितमात्मयोगात् ।

तेजोमयं विश्वमनन्तमाद्यं

यन्मे त्वदन्येन न दृष्टपूर्वम् ॥४७॥

## Chapter XI

Śrī Bhagavān said:

Arjuna, being pleased with you I have shown you, through My own power of Yoga, this supreme, shining, primal and infinite Universal Form, which was not seen before by anyone else than you. 47

न वेदयज्ञाध्ययनैर्न दानै-

र्न च क्रियाभिर्न तपोभिरग्नैः ।

एवंरूपः शक्य अहं नृलोकं

द्रष्टुं त्वदन्येन कुरुप्रवीर ॥४८॥

Arjuna, in this mortal world I cannot be seen in this Form by anyone else than you, either through the study of Vedas or of rituals, or again through gifts, sacrifices, or austere penances. 48

## The Bhagavadgītā

मा ते व्यथा मा च विमूढभावो

दृष्ट्वा रूपं घोरमीदृङ्गमेदम् ।

व्यपेतभीः प्रीतमनाः पुनस्त्वं

तदेव मे रूपमिदं प्रपश्य ॥४९॥

Seeing such a dreadful Form of Mine as this, be not perturbed or perplexed; with a fearless and complacent mind, behold once again the same four-armed Form of Mine, bearing the conch, Chakra, mace and lotus. 49

संजय उवाच—

इत्यर्जुनं वासुदेवस्तथोक्त्वा

स्वकं रूपं दर्शयामास भूयः ।

आश्वासयामास च भीतमेनं

भूत्वा पुनः सौम्यवपुर्महात्मा ॥५०॥



## Chapter XI

Saṅjaya said:

Having thus spoken to Arjuna, Bhagavān Vāsudeva again showed to him in the same way His own four-armed Form; and then assuming a gentle appearance, the high souled Śrī Kṛṣṇa consoled the frightened Arjuna. 50

अर्जुन उवाच—

दृष्ट्वेदं मानुषं रूपं तव सौम्यं जनार्दन ।

इदानीमस्मि संवृत्तः सचेताः प्रकृतिं गतः ॥५१॥

Arjuna said:

Śrī Kṛṣṇa, seeing this gentle human form of Yours, I have now become composed and am my normal self again. 51

श्रीभगवानुवाच—

सुदुर्दर्शमिदं रूपं दृष्टवानसि यन्मम ।

देवा अप्यस्य रूपस्य नित्यं दर्शनकाङ्क्षिण ॥५२॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

Śrī Bhagavān said:

This Form of Mine ( with four arms ) which you have seen is exceedingly difficult to perceive. Even the gods are always eager to behold this Form. 52

नाहं वेदैर्न तपसा न दानेन न चेज्यया ।

शक्य एवंविधो द्रष्टुं दृष्टवानसि मां यथा ॥५३॥

Neither by study of Vedas, nor by penance, nor by charity, nor by ritual can I be seen in this Form ( with four arms ) as you have seen Me. 53

भक्त्या त्वनन्यया शक्य अहमेवंविधोऽर्जुन ।

ज्ञातुं द्रष्टुं च तत्त्वेन प्रवेष्टुं च परंतप ॥५४॥

Through single-minded devotion, however, I can be seen in this Form (with

## Chapter XI

four arms ), and known in essence and even entered into, O valiant Arjuna. 54

मत्कर्मकृन्मत्परमो मद्भक्तः सङ्गवर्जितः ।

निर्वैरः सर्वभूतेषु यः स मामेति पाण्डव ॥५५॥

Arjuna, he who works for My sake, depends on Me, is devoted to Me, has no attachment, and is free from malice towards all beings, reaches Me. 55

ॐ तत्सदिति श्रीमद्भगवद्गीतासूपनिषत्सु ब्रह्मविद्यायां

योगशास्त्रे श्रीकृष्णार्जुनसंवादे विश्वरूपदर्शन-

योगो नामैकादशोऽध्यायः ॥ ११ ॥

Thus, in the Upaniṣad sung by the Lord, the science of Brahma, the scripture on Yoga,

the dialogue between Śrī Kṛṣṇa and

Arjuna, ends the eleventh chapter

entitled "The Yoga of the Vision of the Universal Form."

## Chapter XII

अर्जुन उवाच—

एवं सततयुक्ता ये भक्तास्त्वां पर्युपासते ।  
ये चाप्यक्षरमव्यक्तं तेषां के योगवित्तमाः ॥ १ ॥

Arjuna said:

The devotees who, with their minds constantly fixed in You as shown above, adore You as possessed of form and attributes, and those who adore only the Imperishable, formless Brahma,—of



## Chapter XII

these who are the best knowers of  
Yoga ? 1

श्रीभगवानुवाच—

मय्यावेश्य मनो ये मां नित्ययुक्ता उपासते ।

श्रद्धया परयोपेतास्ते मे युक्ततमा मताः ॥ २ ॥

Sri Bhagavān said:

-I consider them to be the best  
Yogis who, endowed with supreme faith,  
and ever united through meditation with  
Me, worship Me with the mind centred  
on Me. 2

ये त्वक्षरमनिर्देश्यमव्यक्तं पर्युपासते ।

सर्वत्रगमचिन्त्यं च कूटस्थमचलं ध्रुवम् ॥ ३ ॥

संनियम्येन्द्रियग्रामं सर्वत्र समबुद्धयः ।

ते प्राप्नुवन्ति मामेव सर्वभूतहिते रताः ॥ ४ ॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

Those, however, who, controlling all their senses, and even-minded towards all, and devoted to doing good to all creatures, constantly adore as their very self the unthinkable, all-pervading, imperishable, ineffable, eternal, immobile, unmanifest and immutable Brahma, they too come to Me. 3,4

क्लेशोऽधिकतरस्तेषामव्यक्तासक्तचेतसाम् ।

अव्यक्ता हि गतिर्दुःखं देहवद्भिरवाप्यते ॥ ५ ॥

Of course, the path of those who have their mind attached to the Unmanifest is more rugged; for self-identification with the Unmanifest is attained with difficulty by those who are centred in the body. 5

## Chapter XII

ये तु सर्वाणि कर्माणि मयि संन्यस्य मत्पराः ।

अनन्येनैव योगेन मां ध्यायन्त उपासते ॥ ६ ॥

On the other hand, those who being solely devoted to Me and surrendering all actions to Me, worship Me ( the manifest Divine ), constantly meditating on Me with single-minded devotion. 6

तेषामहं समुद्धर्ता मृत्युसंसारसागरात् ।

भवामि नचिरात्पार्थ मय्यावेशितचेतसाम् ॥ ७ ॥

These, Arjuna, I speedily rescue from the ocean of birth and death, their mind being fixed on Me. 7

मय्येव मन आधत्स्व मयि बुद्धिं निवेशय ।

निवसिष्यसि मय्येव अत ऊर्ध्वं न संशयः ॥ ८ ॥

Therefore, fix your mind on Me, and establish your reason in Me alone;

## The Bhagavadgītā

thereafter you will abide in Me. There is no doubt about it. 8

अथ चित्तं समाधातुं न शक्नोषि मयि स्थिरम् ।

अभ्यासयोगेन ततो मामिच्छाप्तुं धनंजय ॥ ९ ॥

If you cannot steadily fix the mind on Me, Arjuna, then seek to attain Me through the Yoga of practice. 9

अभ्यासेऽप्यसमर्थोऽसि मत्कर्मपरमो भव ।

मदर्थमपि कर्माणि कुर्वन्सिद्धिमवाप्स्यसि ॥ १० ॥

If you are unable even to take to practice, be intent on performing action for Me; you will attain perfection even by performing actions for My sake. 10

अथैतदप्यशक्तोऽसि कर्तुं मद्योगमाश्रितः ।

सर्वकर्मफलत्यागं ततः कुरु यतारम्भवान् ॥ ११ ॥



## Chapter XII

If taking recourse to the Yoga of My realization, you are unable to do even this, then, subduing your mind, senses, etc., relinquish the fruit of all actions. 11

श्रेयो हि ज्ञानमभ्यासाज्ज्ञानाद्ध्यानं विशिष्यते ।  
ध्यानात्कर्मफलत्यागस्त्यागाच्छान्तिरनन्तरम् ॥ १२ ॥

Knowledge is better than practice (carried on without proper insight), meditation is superior to knowledge, and renunciation of the fruit of actions is even superior to meditation; for peace immediately follows from renunciation. 12

अद्वेष्टा सर्वभूतानां मैत्रः करुण एव च ।  
निर्ममो निरहंकारः समदुःखसुखः क्षमी ॥ १३ ॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

संतुष्टः सततं योगी यतात्मा दृढनिश्चयः ।

मय्यर्पितमनोबुद्धिर्यो मद्भक्तः स मे प्रियः ॥१४॥

He who is free from malice towards all beings, who is friendly as well as compassionate, who has no feeling of meum and is free from egoism, to whom pleasure and pain are alike and who is forgiving by nature, who is ever content and mentally, united to Me, who has subdued his body, mind and senses and has a firm resolve, who has surrendered his mind and intellect to Me,—that devotee of Mine is dear to Me. 13, 14

यस्मान्नोद्विजते लोको लोकान्नोद्विजते च यः ।

हर्षामर्षभयोद्वेगैर्मुक्तो यः स च मे प्रियः ॥१५॥

## Chapter XII

He who is not a source of annoyance to the world, and who never feels offended with the world, who is free from delight and anger, perturbation and fear, he is dear to Me. 15

अनपेक्षः शुचिर्दक्ष उदासीनो गतव्यथः ।

सर्वारम्भपरित्यागी यो मद्भक्तः स मे प्रियः ॥१६॥

He who craves for nothing, who is both internally and externally pure, is clever and impartial, and has risen above all distractions, who renounces the feeling of doership in all undertakings,—that devotee is dear to Me. 16

यो न हृष्यति न द्वेष्टि न शोचति न काङ्क्षति ।

शुभाशुभपरित्यागी भक्तिमान्यः स मे प्रियः ॥१७॥

He who neither rejoices nor hates, nor grieves, nor desires, who renounces

## The Bhagavadgītā

both good and evil and is full of devotion to Me, is dear to Me. 17

समः शत्रौ च मित्रे च तथा मानापमानयोः ।

शीतोष्णसुखदुःखेषु समः सङ्गविवर्जितः ॥ १८ ॥

He who is alike to friend and foe, and likewise to honour and ignominy, who is alike to heat and cold, pleasure and pain, etc. and is free from attachment. 18

तुल्यनिन्दास्तुतिर्मौनी संतुष्टो येन केनचित् ।

अनिकेतः स्थिरमतिर्भक्तिमान्मे प्रियो नरः ॥ १९ ॥

He who takes praise and reproach alike, who is given to contemplation and content with whatever comes unasked for, without attachment to home, fixed, in mind and full of devotion to Me, that man is dear to Me. 19



## Chapter XII

ये तु धर्म्यामृतमिदं यथोक्तं पर्युपासते ।

श्रद्धधाना मत्परमा भक्तास्तेऽतीव मे प्रियाः ॥ २० ॥

They who fully partake of this nectar of pious wisdom set forth above, who are endowed with faith and are solely devoted to Me, those devotees are extremely dear to Me. 20

ॐ तत्सदिति श्रीमद्भगवद्गीतासूपनिषत्सु ब्रह्मविद्यायां  
योगशास्त्रे श्रीकृष्णार्जुनसंवादे भक्तियोगो  
नाम द्वादशोऽध्यायः ॥ १२ ॥

Thus, in the Upaniṣad sung by the Lord, the science of Brahma, the scripture on Yoga, the dialogue between Sri Kṛṣṇa and Arjuna, ends the twelfth chapter, entitled "The Yoga of Devotion".



## Chapter XIII

श्रीभगवानुवाच—

इदं शरीरं कौन्तेय क्षेत्रमित्यभिधीयते ।

एतद्यो वेत्ति तं प्राहुः क्षेत्रज्ञ इति तद्विदः ॥ १ ॥

Śrī Bhagavān said:

This body, O son of Kuntī, is spoken of as the Field (Kṣetra); one who knows this, him the sages, who

## Chapter XIII

know the truth about both, call the  
Knower of the Field ( Kṣetrajña ). 1

क्षेत्रज्ञं चापि मां विद्धि सर्वक्षेत्रेषु भारत ।

क्षेत्रक्षेत्रज्ञयोर्ज्ञानं यत्तज्ज्ञानं मतं मम ॥ २ ॥

Know Myself to be the Kṣetrajña  
(Jivātmā) also in all the Kṣetras, Arjuna,  
It is the knowledge of Kṣetra and  
Kṣetrajña ( i. e., of Prakṛti and Puruṣa,  
Matter and Spirit ) which I consider as  
the true knowledge. 2

तत्क्षेत्रं यच्च यादृक्च यद्विकारि यतश्च यत् ।

स च यो यत्प्रभावश्च तत्समासेन मे शृणु ॥ ३ ॥

What that Kṣetra is, what it is like,  
what are its evolutes, whence is what,  
and also who that Kṣetrajña is and what

any fruit with seed in a hard shell

## The Bhagavadgītā

his powers are, hear all this from Me  
in a nutshell. *In small compass*

ऋषिभिर्बहुधा गीतं छन्दोभिर्विविधैः पृथक् । *not for nuts*  
ब्रह्मसूत्रपदैश्चैव हेतुमद्भिर्विनिश्चितैः ॥ ४ ॥

The truth about the Kṣetra as well  
as the Kṣetrajña has been sung by the  
seers in manifold ways; it has been  
stated separately in different Vedic  
chants and also in the conclusive and  
reasoned texts of the Brahmasūtras. 4

महाभूतान्यहंकारो बुद्धिरव्यक्तमेव च ।

इन्द्रियाणि दशैकं च पञ्च चेन्द्रियगोचराः ॥ ५ ॥

The five subtle elements ( ether,  
air, fire, water and earth ), the ego, the  
intellect, Primordial Matter, the ten  
organs, the mind, and the five objects

*That has been  
assumed to fall 270  
all ~~the~~ space and  
transmit electro-magnetic  
waves*



## Chapter XIII

of sense ( sound, touch, colour, taste and smell ). 5

इच्छा द्वेषः सुखं दुःखं संघातश्चेतना धृतिः ।  
एतत्क्षेत्रं समासेन सविकारमुदाहृतम् ॥ ६ ॥

Desire, aversion, pleasure, pain, the body, consciousness, firmness; this is the Kṣetra, with its evolutes, briefly described. 6

अमानित्वमदम्भित्वमहिंसा क्षान्तिराजं वम् ।  
आचार्योपासनं शौचं स्थैर्यमात्मविनिग्रहः ॥ ७ ॥

Absence of pride, freedom from hypocrisy, non-violence, forgiveness, straightforwardness, service of the preceptor, purity of mind and body, steadfastness, self-control. 7

## The Bhagavadgītā

इन्द्रियार्थेषु वैराग्यमनहंकार एव च ।

जन्ममृत्युजराव्याधिदुःखदोषानुदर्शनम् ॥ ८ ॥

Dispassion towards the objects of senses, and absence of egoism, constant revolving in mind of the pain and evil inherent in birth, death, old age and disease; 8

असक्तिरनभिष्वङ्गः पुत्रदारगृहादिषु ।

नित्यं च समचित्तत्वमिष्टानिष्टोपपत्तिषु ॥ ९ ॥

Absence of attachment, absence of self-identification with son, wife, home, etc., constant balance of mind both in favourable and unfavourable circumstances, 9

मयि चानन्ययोगेन भक्तिरव्यभिचारिणी ।

विविक्तदेशसेवित्वमरतिर्जनसंसदि ॥ १० ॥

## Chapter XIII

Unflinching devotion to Me through exclusive attachment of mind, living in secluded and sacred places, absence of pleasure in the company of men, 10

अध्यात्मज्ञाननित्यत्वं तत्त्वज्ञानार्थदर्शनम् ।

एतज्ज्ञानमिति प्रोक्तमज्ञानं यदतोऽन्यथा ॥११॥

Fixity in Self-knowledge, observing everywhere the object of true Knowledge ( God ); all this is declared to be Knowledge ( Wisdom ); what is contrary to this is called ignorance. 11

ज्ञेयं यत्तत्प्रवक्ष्यामि यज्ज्ञात्वामृतमश्नुते ।

अनादिमत्परं ब्रह्म न सत्तन्नासदुच्यते ॥१२॥

Now I shall speak to you at length about that which ought to be known and knowing which one attains immor-

## The Bhagavadgītā

talities; that beginningless supreme Brahma is said to be neither Sat (being) nor Asat (non-being). 12

सर्वतःपाणिपादं तत्सर्वतोऽक्षिशिरोमुखम् ।

सर्वतःश्रुतिमल्लोके सर्वमावृत्य तिष्ठति ॥१३॥

It has hands and feet everywhere, eyes, head and face everywhere, ears everywhere. It stands pervading all. 13

सर्वेन्द्रियगुणाभासं सर्वेन्द्रियविवर्जितम् ।

असक्तं सर्वभृच्चैव निर्गुणं गुणभोक्तृ च ॥१४॥

It is the perceiver of all sense-objects, though devoid of all senses; though unattached and attributeless, It is the sustainer of all and enjoyer of the qualities (the three modes of Prakṛti). 14

diffuse

To pour out  
all round,

274

to send out in all  
directions  
to irradiate



## Chapter XIII

बहिरन्तश्च भूतानामचरं चरमेव च ।

सूक्ष्मत्वात्तद्विज्ञेयं दूरस्थं चान्तिके च तत् ॥ १५ ॥

It is without and within all beings, and constitutes both animate and inanimate creation. By reason of Its subtlety, It is incomprehensible; It is both at hand and far away. 15

अविभक्तं च भूतेषु विभक्तमिव च स्थितम् ।

भूतमर्तुं च तज्ज्ञेयं ग्रसिष्णु प्रभविष्णु च ॥ १६ ॥

Though indivisible ( like ether ), It stands as if divided among beings. That knowable substance is the sustainer of beings ( as Viṣṇu ), destroyer ( as Rudra ) and creator ( as Brahmā ). 16

ज्योतिषामपि तज्ज्योतिस्तमसः परमुच्यते ।

ज्ञानं ज्ञेयं ज्ञानगम्यं हृदि सर्वस्य विष्ठितम् ॥ १७ ॥

## The Bhagavadgitā

The light of all lights, It is said to be beyond the darkness of Māyā. It is Knowledge itself, as well as the object of Knowledge, and is also worth attaining through Knowledge, It is specially seated in the hearts of all. 17

इति क्षेत्रं तथा ज्ञानं ज्ञेयं चोक्तं समासतः ।

मद्भक्त एतद्विज्ञाय मद्भावायोपपद्यते ॥ १८ ॥

Thus the Kṣetra as well as Knowledge and the Object of Knowledge have been briefly described; knowing this in reality, My devotee enters into My Being. 18

प्रकृतिं पुरुषं चैव विद्वद्यनादी उभावपि ।

विकारांश्च गुणांश्चैव विद्धि प्रकृतिसंभवान् ॥ १९ ॥

## Chapter XIII

Know Matter and Spirit to be both without beginning; and know all modifications and qualities also to be Nature-born. 19

कार्यकरणकर्तृत्वे हेतुः प्रकृतिरुच्यते ।

पुरुषः सुखदुःखानां भोक्तृत्वे हेतुरुच्यते ॥२०॥

Matter is said to be the cause of production of the body and the senses; while Spirit is said to be the cause of experience of pleasure and pain. 20

पुरुषः प्रकृतिस्थो हि भुङ्क्ते प्रकृतिजान्गुणान् ।

कारणं गुणसङ्गोऽस्य सदसद्योनिजन्मसु ॥२१॥

Spirit, when seated in Matter, enjoys all objects of the nature of the three Gunas (qualities) born of Matter; attachment to these qualities is the cause of his birth in good and evil wombs. 21

## The Bhagavadgītā

उपद्रष्टानुमन्ता च भर्ता भोक्ता महेश्वरः ।

परमात्मेति चाप्युक्तो देहेऽस्मिन्पुरुषः परः ॥२२॥

Spirit, even when dwelling in this body, is really transcendent (beyond the triple nature ). He has been declared to be the Witness, the Guide, the Sustainer, the Experiencer (of pleasure and pain ), the Supreme Lord, and the Oversoul. 22

य एवं वेत्ति पुरुषं प्रकृतिं च गुणैः सह ।

सर्वथा वर्तमानोऽपि न स भूयोऽभिजायते ॥२३॥

He who thus knows Puruṣa ( Spirit ) and Prakṛti ( Nature ) with its threefold qualities,—even though engaged in all sorts of activities, he is not born again. 23

ध्यानेनात्मनि पश्यन्ति केचिदात्मानमात्मना ।

अन्ये सांख्येन योगेन कर्मयोगेन चापरे ॥२४॥



## Chapter XIII

Some by meditation behold the Self (Paramātmā) in their own heart with the help of their pure reason; others by proceeding along the path of Knowledge; and others, again, by treading the path of Action. 24

अन्ये त्वेवमजानन्तः श्रुत्वान्येभ्य उपासते ।

तेऽपि चातितरन्त्येव मृत्युं श्रुतिपरायणाः ॥ २५ ॥

Others, however, not knowing thus, take to worship by hearing from others; and they, too, who are thus intent on hearing, transcend death. 25

यावत्संजायते किञ्चित्सर्वं स्थावरजङ्गमम् ।

क्षेत्रक्षेत्रज्ञसंयोगात्तद्विद्धि भरतर्षभ ॥ २६ ॥

Arjuna, whatever being, animate or inanimate, is born, know that as emanated

## The Bhagavadgītā

from the union of Kṣetra ( Matter ) and  
Kṣetrajña ( Spirit ). 26

समं सर्वेषु भूतेषु तिष्ठन्तं परमेश्वरम् ।

विनश्यत्स्वविनश्यन्तं यः पश्यति स पश्यति ॥ २७ ॥

Verily he is the seer, who sees the  
Supreme Lord as the only imperishable  
substance abiding equally in all perish-  
able beings. 27

समं पश्यन् हि सर्वत्र समवस्थितमीश्वरम् ।

न हि नस्त्यात्मना ऽऽत्मानं ततो याति परां गतिम् ॥ २८ ॥

Seeing the same Lord dwelling  
equally in all, he does not kill his  
Self by the Self, and thereby reaches  
the supreme state. 28

प्रकृत्यैव च कर्माणि क्रियमाणानि सर्वशः ।

यः पश्यति तथात्मानमकर्तारं स पश्यति ॥ २९ ॥

## Chapter XIII

And he really sees, who sees all actions being done in all respects only by nature, and the Self as the non-doer. 29

यदा भूतपृथग्भावमेकस्थमनुपश्यति ।  
तत एव च विस्तारं ब्रह्म संपद्यते तदा ॥३०॥

Whenever he perceives the diversified existence of beings as rooted in the One Supreme Being, and the projection of all beings from Him, that very moment he attains Brahma. 30

अनादित्वान्निर्गुणत्वात्परमात्मायमन्ययः ।  
शरीरस्थोऽपि कौन्तेय न करोति न लिप्यते ॥३१॥

Arjuna, being without beginning and without attributes, this imperish-

## The Bhagavadgītā

able Paramātmā ( Supreme Soul ), though dwelling in the body, neither acts, nor gets contaminated. 31

यथा सर्वगतं सौक्ष्म्यादाकाशं नोपलिप्यते ।

सर्वत्रावस्थितो देहे तथात्मा नोपलिप्यते ॥३२॥

As the all-pervasive ether is not contaminated by reason of its subtle character, so seated everywhere in the body, the Self is not contaminated, 32

To  
mixed  
with

यथा प्रकाशयत्येकः कृत्स्नं लोकमिमं रविः ।

क्षेत्रं क्षेत्री तथा कृत्स्नं प्रकाशयति भारत ॥३३॥

Arjuna, as the one sun illumines this whole world, so the one Ātmā (Spirit) illumines the whole Kṣetra ( Field ). 33

क्षेत्रक्षेत्रज्ञयोरेवमन्तरं ज्ञानचक्षुषा ।

भूतप्रकृतिमोक्षं च ये विदुर्यान्ति ते परम् ॥३४॥



## Chapter XIII

Those who by the eye of wisdom perceive the difference between the Field and the Knower of the Field, and the negation of Prakṛti with her evolutes, reach the Supreme. 34

ॐ तत्सदिति श्रीमद्भगवद्गीतासूपनिषत्सु ब्रह्मविद्यायां  
योगशास्त्रे श्रीकृष्णार्जुनसंवादे क्षेत्रक्षेत्रज्ञविभाग-  
योगो नाम त्रयोदशोऽध्यायः ॥ १३ ॥

Thus, in the Upaniṣad sung by the Lord, the science of Brahma, the scripture on Yoga, the dialogue between Sri Kṛṣṇa and Arjuna, ends the thirteenth chapter entitled "The Yoga of discrimination between the Field and the Knower of the Field."

## Chapter XIV

श्रीभगवानुवाच—

परं भूयः प्रवक्ष्यामि ज्ञानानां ज्ञानमुत्तमम् ।

यज्ज्ञात्वा मुनयः सर्वे परां सिद्धिमितो गताः॥ १ ॥

Sri Bhagavān said:

I shall impart to you once more the supreme wisdom, the best of all wisdoms, acquiring which all sages have

## Chapter XIV

attained highest perfection, being liberated from this mundane existence. 1

इदं ज्ञानमुपाश्रित्य मम साधर्म्यमागताः ।  
सर्गेऽपि नोपजायन्ते प्रलये न व्यथन्ति च ॥ २ ॥

Those, who, having acquired this wisdom, have entered into My Being, are not born again at the beginning of creation, and are not tormented during final dissolution. 2

मम योनिर्महद्ब्रह्म तस्मिन्नामं दधाम्यहम् ।  
संभवः सर्वभूतानां ततो भवति भारत ॥ ३ ॥

My Prakṛti or Nature in her primordial, undeveloped state is the womb of all creatures; in that I place the seed ( of consciousness ). The birth of all beings follows from this combina-

## The Bhagavadgītā

tion of Matter and Spirit, O descendant  
of Bharata. 3

सर्वयोनिषु कौन्तेय मूर्तयः संभवन्ति याः ।

तासां ब्रह्म महद्योनिरहं बीजप्रदः पिता ॥ ४ ॥

Of all the bodies that take birth  
from different wombs, this Primordial  
Matter is the Mother, and I am the  
procreating Father, O son of Kuntī. 4

सत्त्वं रजस्तम इति गुणाः प्रकृतिसंभवाः ।

निबध्नन्ति महाबाहो देहे देहिनमन्ययम् ॥ ५ ॥

The Nature-born qualities of Sattva,  
Rajas and Tamas firmly tie the  
imperishable soul to the body, O valiant  
Arjuna. 5

तत्र सत्त्वं निर्मलत्वात्प्रकाशकमनामयम् ।

सुखसङ्गेन बध्नाति ज्ञानसङ्गेन चानघ ॥ ६ ॥



## Chapter XIV

Of these Sattva, being immaculate, is illuminating and flawless; it binds through self-identification with happiness and wisdom, O sinless Arjuna. 6

रजो रागात्मकं विद्धि तृष्णासङ्गसमुद्भवम् ।

तन्निबध्नाति कौन्तेय कर्मसङ्गेन देहिनम् ॥ ७ ॥

Again, know Rajas, which is of the nature of passion, as born of cupidity and attachment. It binds the soul through attachment to actions and their fruits, O son of Kuntī. 7

तमस्त्वज्ञानजं विद्धि मोहनं सर्वदेहिनाम् ।

प्रमादालस्यनिद्राभिस्तन्निबध्नाति भारत ॥ ८ ॥

And know Tamas, the deluder of all embodied beings, as born of ignorance. It binds the soul through error, sloth and sleep, Arjuna. 8

## The Bhagavadgītā

सत्त्वं सुखे संजयति रजः कर्मणि भारत ।

ज्ञानमावृत्य तु तमः प्रमादे संजयत्युत ॥ ९ ॥

Arjuna, Sattva urges one to happiness, and Rajas to action; while Tamas, clouding wisdom, urges one to error. 9

रजस्तमश्चाभिभूय सत्त्वं भवति भारत ।

रजः सत्त्वं तमश्चैव तमः सत्त्वं रजस्तथा ॥ १० ॥

Sattva prevails suppressing Rajas and Tamas; Rajas prevails suppressing Sattva and Tamas; and Tamas prevails suppressing Sattva and Rajas, O descendant of Bharata. 10

सर्वद्वारेषु देहेऽस्मिन् प्रकाश उपजायते ।

ज्ञानं यदा तदा विद्याद्विवृद्धं सत्त्वमित्युत ॥ ११ ॥

## Chapter XIV

When in this body, as well as in the mind and senses, perspicuity and discernment make their appearance, then Sattva should be regarded as predominant. 11

लोभः प्रवृत्तिरासृग्मः कर्मणामशमः स्पृहा ।

रजस्येतानि जायन्ते विवृद्धे भरतर्षभ ॥१२॥

With the preponderance of Rajas, O chief of Bharatas, greed, activity, undertaking of actions with a selfish motive, restlessness and a thirst for enjoyment make their appearance. 12

अप्रकाशोऽप्रवृत्तिश्च प्रमादो मोह एव च ।

तमस्येतानि जायन्ते विवृद्धे कुरुनन्दन ॥१३॥

With the growth of Tamas, Arjuna, obtuseness, inactivity, carelessness and

## The Bhagavadgītā

stupor,—all these appear in the mind  
and senses. 13

यदा सत्त्वे प्रवृद्धे तु प्रलयं याति देहभृत् ।  
तदोत्तमविदां लोकानमलान् प्रतिपद्यते ॥१४॥

When a person dies during the  
preponderance of Sattva, he obtains the  
faultless worlds ( heaven, etc. ) gained  
by men of noble deeds. 14

रजसि प्रलयं गत्वा कर्मसङ्गिषु जायते ।  
तथा प्रलीनस्तमसि मूढयोनिषु जायते ॥१५॥

Dying when Rajas is in the ascen-  
dant, he is born among those attached  
to action; likewise expiring during the  
predominance of Tamas, he is born in  
the wombs of stupid creatures. 15



## Chapter X

कर्मेणः सुकृतस्याहुः सात्त्विकं निर्मलं फलम् ।

रजसस्तु फलं दुःखमज्ञानं तमसः फलम् ॥१६॥

It is said that the fruit of Sattvic actions is good and faultless (in the shape of happiness, wisdom, dispassion, etc. ); the fruit of Rajas is sorrow and the fruit of Tamas, ignorance. 16

सत्त्वात्संजायते ज्ञानं रजसो लोभ एव च ।

प्रमादमोहौ तमसो भवतोऽज्ञानमेव च ॥१७॥

Wisdom arises from Sattva, and greed, undoubtedly, from Rajas; likewise error, stupor and also ignorance arise from Tamas. 17

ऊर्ध्वं गच्छन्ति सत्त्वस्था मध्ये तिष्ठन्ति राजसाः ।

जघन्यगुणवृत्तिस्था अधो गच्छन्ति तामसाः ॥१८॥

## The Bhagavadgita

Those who are established in Sattva rise to higher regions ( such as heaven, etc. ); those of a Rajasic nature stay in the middle ( i. e., in this mortal world ); while those of a Tamasic temperament, rooted in error, sloth, sleep, etc, born of Tamas, descend into the wombs of insects, birds and beasts, or into the infernal regions. 18

नान्यं गुणेभ्यः कर्तारं यदा द्रष्टुमुपश्यति ।

गुणेभ्यश्च परं वेत्ति मद्भावं सोऽधिगच्छति ॥१९॥

When the seer does not see any agent other than the three Guṇas and knows Me, who stand beyond these Guṇas, he enters into My Being. 19

गुणानेतानतीत्य त्रीन् देही देहसमुद्भवान् ।

जन्ममृत्युजरादुःखैर्विमुक्तोऽमृतमश्नुते ॥२०॥

## Chapter XIV

Having transcended the three Guṇas, which have produced the body, and freed from birth, death, old age and sorrow, he enjoys immortality. 20

अर्जुन उवाच—

कैलिङ्गैस्त्रीन् गुणानेतानतीतो भवति प्रभो ।

किमाचारः कथं चैतांस्त्रीन् गुणानतिवर्तते ॥ २१ ॥

Arjuna said:

What are the marks of him who has risen above the three Guṇas, and what his conduct ? And how, Lord, does he rise above the three Guṇas ? 21

श्रीभगवानुवाच—

प्रकाशं च प्रवृत्तिं च मोहमेव च पाण्डव ।

न द्वेष्टि संग्रवृत्तानि न निवृत्तानि काङ्क्षति ॥ २२ ॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

Sri Bhagavān said:

Arjuna, he who feels no aversion to light ( which is born of Sattva ) or activity ( which is born of Rajas ) or stupor ( which is born of Tamas ), when they are present, and does not long for them when they are absent, 22

उदासीनवदासीनो गुणैर्यो न विचाल्यते ।

गुणा वर्तन्त इत्येव योऽवतिष्ठति नेङ्गते ॥२३॥

He who, sitting like a witness, is not moved by the Guṇas, and who knowing that only the Guṇas act, remains firmly established in God, and is never shaken from that state, 23

समदुःखसुखः स्वस्थः समलोष्टाश्मकाञ्चनः ।

तुल्यप्रियाप्रियो धीरस्तुल्यनिन्दात्मसंस्तुतिः ॥२४॥



## Chapter XIV

He who takes sorrow and joy alike, is established in the self, regards a clod of earth, a stone and a piece of gold as equal in value, receives both pleasant and unpleasant things in the same spirit, and views censure and praise alike, 24

मानापमानयोस्तुल्यस्तुल्यो मित्रारिपक्षयोः ।

सर्वारम्भपरित्यागी गुणातीतः स उच्यते ॥ २५ ॥

He who is alike to honour and ignominy, is equal to friend and foe, and has renounced the sense of doership in all undertakings, he is said to have risen above the three Gunas. 25

मां च योऽव्यभिचारेण भक्तियोगेन सेवते ।

स गुणान् समतीत्यैतान् ब्रह्मभूयाथ कल्पते ॥ २६ ॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

And he who constantly worships Me through the Yoga of exclusive devotion, transcending these three Guṇas, he becomes eligible for attaining Brahma. 26

ब्रह्मणो हि प्रतिष्ठाहममृतस्याव्ययस्य च ।

शाश्वतस्य च धर्मस्य सुखस्यैकान्तिकस्य च ॥ २७ ॥

For, I am the abode of the imperishable Brahma, of immortality of everlasting virtue and of unending bliss. 27

ॐ तत्सदिति श्रीमद्भगवद्गीतासूपनिषत्सु ब्रह्मविद्यायां

योगशास्त्रे श्रीकृष्णार्जुनसंवादे गुणत्रयविभाग-

योगो नाम चतुर्दशोऽध्यायः ॥ १४ ॥

Thus, in the Upaniṣad sung by the Lord, the science of Brahma, the scripture on Yoga, the dialogue between Śrī Kṛṣṇa and Arjuna, ends the fourteenth chapter

entitled "The Yoga of Classification of the three Guṇas."

## Chapter XV

श्रीभगवानुवाच—

ऊर्ध्वमूलमधःशाखमश्वत्थं प्राहुरव्ययम् ।

ऊर्न्दांसि यस्य पर्णानि यस्तं वेद स वेदवित् ॥ १ ॥

Sri Bhagavān said:

He who knows the Peepul tree  
(in the shape of creation), which is

## The Bhagavadgita

said to be imperishable, with its roots in the Primal Being, whose stem is represented by Brahmā ( the Creator ), and whose leaves are the Vedas, is a knower of ( the real import of ) the Vedas. 1

अधश्चोर्ध्वं प्रसृतास्तस्य शाखा  
गुणप्रवृद्धा विषयप्रवालाः ।  
अधश्च मूलान्यनुसंततानि  
कर्मानुबन्धीनि मनुष्यलोके ॥ २ ॥

The Branches of this tree ( in the shape of the different species of living beings ), nourished by the three Gunas, and having sense-enjoyments for their tender leaves, extend both downwards and upwards; and its roots ( in the



## Chapter XV

shape of egoism, the feeling of meum and latent desires ), which bind the soul according to his actions in this mortal world are also spread in all regions, higher as well as lower. 2

न रूपमस्येह तथोपलभ्यते

नान्तो न चादिर्न च संप्रतिष्ठा ।

अश्वत्थमेनं सुविरूढमूल-

मसङ्गशस्त्रेण दृढेन छित्त्वा ॥ ३ ॥

Its nature, what it is stated to be, is not actually perceived here ( on mature thought ); for it has neither beginning nor end, nor even stability. So, cutting down this Peepul tree, whose roots are so deep-laid, by the formidable weapon of dispassion. 3

## The Bhagavadgītā

ततः पदं तत्परिमार्गितव्यं  
यस्मिन्गता न निवर्तन्ति भूयः ।  
तमेव चाद्यं पुरुषं प्रपद्ये  
यतः प्रवृत्तिः प्रसृता पुराणी ॥ ४ ॥

One should diligently seek that Supreme State ( God ), having reached which one never returns; and saying to himself, "I seek refuge in the Primal Person ( Nārāyaṇa ), from whom has emanated this beginningless flow of creation", one should meditate on Him. 4

निर्मानमोहा जितसङ्गदोषा  
अध्यात्मनित्या विनिवृत्तकामाः ।  
द्वन्द्वैर्विमुक्ताः सुखदुःखसंज्ञै-  
र्गच्छन्त्यमूढाः पदमव्ययं तत् ॥ ५ ॥

## Chapter XV

Those undeluded ones, who are free from pride and infatuation, who have conquered the vice of attachment and dwell constantly in God, and whose desires have completely disappeared,—freed from the pairs of opposites known as pleasure and pain, they attain that imperishable Supreme State. 5

न तद्भासयते सूर्यो न शशाङ्को न पावकः ।  
यद्गत्वा न निवर्तन्ते तद्धाम परमं मम ॥ ६ ॥

Having reached which men do not return, that is My Supreme State neither the sun nor moon nor fire can illumine It. 6

ममैवांशो जीवलोके जीवभूतः सनातनः ।  
मनःषष्ठानीन्द्रियाणि प्रकृतिस्थानि कर्षति ॥ ७ ॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

The Jivātmā ( soul ) in the body is an eternal portion of Myself; it draws with it the mind and the five senses that rest in Matter. 7

शरीरं यदवाप्नोति यच्चाप्युत्क्रामतीश्वरः ।  
गृहीत्वैतानि संयाति वायुर्गन्धानिवाशयात् ॥ ८ ॥

As the wind carries away odours from their seat, even so the Jivātmā, the lord of the body, snatching these ( the mind and the senses ) from the body, which it casts off, migrates into the body, which it acquires. 8

श्रोत्रं चक्षुः स्पर्शनं च रसनं घ्राणमेव च ।  
अधिष्ठाय मनश्चायं विषयानुपसेवते ॥ ९ ॥

This ( Jivātmā ), while dwelling in the ear, the eye, the senses of touch,



## Chapter XV

taste and smell and the mind, enjoys the objects of the senses. 9

उत्क्रामन्तं स्थितं वापि भुञ्जानं वा गुणान्वितम् ।  
विमूढा नानुपश्यन्ति पश्यन्ति ज्ञानचक्षुषः ॥ १० ॥

The ignorant do not perceive the soul departing from, or dwelling in, the body, enjoying the objects of sense, or endowed with the three attributes. Only those, who possess the eye of wisdom, know it in reality. 10

यतन्तो योगिनश्चैनं पश्यन्त्यात्मन्यवस्थितम् ।  
यतन्तोऽप्यकृतात्मानो नैनं पश्यन्त्यचेतसः ॥ ११ ॥

Even striving Yogis are able to know the Self dwelling in their heart. The ignorant, however, whose

## The Bhagavadgita

have not been purified, perceive Him  
not, even though striving. 11

यदादिस्थितं तेजो जगद्भासयतेऽखिलम् ।

यच्चन्द्रमसि यच्चाग्नौ तत्तेजो विद्धि ममकम् ॥ १२ ॥

The effulgence inherent in the  
sun, which illumines the entire universe,  
and that which exists in the moon as  
well as in the fire, know it to be My  
effulgence, 12

गामाविश्य च भूतानि धारयाम्यहमोजसा ।

पुष्णामि चोषधीः सर्वाः सोमो भूत्वा रसात्मकः ॥ १३ ॥

And entering the earth, it is I who  
sustain all beings by "My power; and  
becoming the nectarean moon, I  
nourish all plants, 13

## Chapter XV

अहं वैश्वानरो भूत्वा प्राणिनां देहमाश्रितः ।

प्राणापानसमायुक्तः पचाम्यन्नं चतुर्विधम् ॥१४॥

Becoming the fire which dwells in the bodies of living beings, and uniting with the Prāṇa and Apāna breaths, I digest the four kinds of food. 14

सर्वस्य चाहं हृदि संनिविष्टो

मत्तः स्मृतिर्ज्ञानमपोहनं च ।

वेदैश्च सर्वैरहमेव वेद्यो

वेदान्तकृद्वेदविदेव चाहम् ॥१५॥

And it is I who am installed in the hearts of all (as their inner witness). Memory, wisdom and the ratiocinative faculty also emanate from Me. It is I whom the four Vedas seek to know; nay, it is I who am the author of the

## The Bhagavadgītā

Vedānta as well as the Knower of the Vedas. 15

द्वाविमौ पुरुषौ लोके क्षरश्चाक्षर एव च ।  
क्षरः सर्वाणि भूतानि कूटस्थोऽक्षर उच्यते ॥ १६ ॥

In this world there are two kinds of Puruṣas (entities)—perishable and imperishable; the bodies of all beings are perishable, and the Jīvātmā or soul within is said to be imperishable. 16

उत्तमः पुरुषस्त्वन्यः परमात्मेत्युदाहृतः ।  
यो लोकत्रयमाविश्य बिभर्त्यव्यय ईश्वरः ॥ १७ ॥

The Supreme Person is distinct from both, who, interpenetrating the three worlds, sustains all, and is



## Chapter XV

designated as the Universal Soul and the  
imperishable Lord. 17

यस्मात्क्षरमतीतोऽहमक्षरादपि चोत्तमः ।

अतोऽस्मि लोके वेदे च प्रथितः पुरुषोत्तमः ॥१८॥

Since I am beyond perishable Matter  
and superior to the imperishable Soul  
(enveloped in Māyā), hence it is that  
I am known in the world as well as  
in the Veda as the Supreme Person. 18

यो मामेवमसंमूढो जानाति पुरुषोत्तमम् ।

स सर्वविद्भजति मां सर्वभावेन भारत ॥१९॥

Arjuna, the undeluded person, who  
thus knows Me in reality as the Supreme  
Person, he, knowing all, worships Me  
with his whole being. 19

## The Bhagavadgītā

इति गुह्यतमं शास्त्रमिदमुक्तं मयानघ ।

एतद्बुद्ध्वा बुद्धिमान्स्यात्कृतकृत्यश्च भारत ॥२०॥

O sinless Arjuna, in this way this most secret teaching has been imparted by Me: assimilating this man becomes wise and attains supreme satisfaction. 20

ॐ तत्सदिति श्रीमद्भगवद्गीतासूपनिषत्सु ब्रह्मविद्यायां  
योगशास्त्रे श्रीकृष्णार्जुनसंवादे पुरुषोत्तमयोगो  
नाम पञ्चदशोऽध्यायः ॥ १५ ॥

Thus, in the Upaniṣad sung by the Lord, the science of Brahma, the scripture on Yoga, the dialogue between Śrī Kṛṣṇa and Arjuna, ends the fifteenth chapter entitled "The Yoga of the Supreme Person."



## Chapter XVI

श्रीभगवानुवाच—

अभयं सत्त्वसंशुद्धिर्ज्ञानयोगव्यवस्थितिः ।

दानं दमश्च यज्ञश्च स्वाध्यायस्तप आर्जवम् ॥ १ ॥

Śrī Bhagavān said:

Fearlessness, absolute purity of heart,  
constant absorption of mind in medita-  
tion for Self-Realization and the Sattvic

## The Bhagavadgītā

form of charity, control of the senses, worship ( of God as well *as* celestial beings and superiors ) and the performance of Agnihotra ( pouring oblations into the sacred fire ) and other auspicious acts, study of the Vedas *and* other sacred texts, chanting of Divine Names and glories, bearing of hardships for the sake of one's own Dharma and straightness of mind, including straightness of the body and senses,— I

अहिंसा सत्यमक्रोधस्त्यागः शान्तिरपैशुनम्।

दया भूतेष्वलोलुप्त्वं मार्दवं ह्रीरचापलम् ॥ २ ॥

Non-violence in thought, word and deed, truthfulness and geniality of speech, absence of anger even on



## Chapter XVI

provocation, renunciation of the idea of doership in action, tranquillity of mind, refraining from malicious gossip, kindness to all creatures, absence of attachment to the objects of senses even during their contact with the senses, mildness, sense of shame in doing things not sanctioned by the scriptures or usage, abstaining from idle pursuits,—2

तेजः क्षमा धृतिः शौचमद्रोहो नातिमानिता ।

भवन्ति संपदं दैवीमभिजातस्य भारत ॥ ३ ॥

Sublimity, forgiveness, fortitude external purity, absence of malice, absence of a feeling of self-importance: these are the marks of one who is naturally endowed with divine virtues, O descendant of Bharata.

3

## The Bhagavadgītā

दम्भो दर्पोऽभिमानश्च क्रोधः पाह्यमेव च ।

अज्ञानं चाभिजातस्य पार्थ संपदमासुरीम् ॥ ४ ॥

Hypocrisy, arrogance, pride, anger, harshness and ignorance; these, Arjuna, are the marks of one who is born with demoniacal properties. 4

दैवी संपद्विमोक्षाय निबन्धायासुरी मता ।

मा शुचः संपदं दैवीमभिजातोऽसि पाण्डव ॥ ५ ॥

Divine virtues are regarded as conducive to liberation and demoniacal properties as conducive to bondage. Grieve not, Arjuna, for you are born with divine virtues. 5

द्वौ भूतसर्गौ लोकेऽस्मिन्दैव आसुर एव च ।

दैवो विस्तरयः प्रोक्त आसुरं पार्थ मे शृणु ॥ ६ ॥

## Chapter XVI

Arjuna, in this world there are two types of men—divine and demoniacal. The divine type has been described at length; hear from Me the demoniacal also. 6

प्रवृत्तिं च निवृत्तिं च जना न विदुरासुराः ।  
न शौचं नापि चाचारो न सत्यं तेषु विद्यते ॥ ७ ॥

Men belonging to the demoniac group know not what is right activity and what is right cessation of activity. Hence they possess neither purity (internal or external), nor good conduct nor truth. 7

असत्यमप्रतिष्ठं ते जगदादुरनीश्वरम् ।  
अपरस्परसंभूतं किमन्यत्कामहैतुकम् ॥ ८ ॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

They say: "The world is without any foundation and altogether false, godless and brought about by mutual union ( of man and woman ); what else ?" 8

एतां दृष्टिमवष्टभ्य नष्टात्मानोऽल्पबुद्धयः ।

प्रभवन्त्युग्रकर्माणः क्षयाय जगतोऽहिताः ॥ ९ ॥

Embracing this view, these lost souls with little understanding, ill-disposed and devoted to cruel actions, are born for the destruction of the world. 9

काममाश्रित्य दुष्पूरं दम्भमानसदान्विताः ।

मोहाद्गृहीत्वासद्ग्राहान्प्रवर्तन्तेऽशुचिब्रताः । १० ।

Possessed of hypocrisy, conceit and arrogance and given to insatiable passion, and adopting false doctrines due to



## Chapter XVI

delusion, they take to action with  
impure vows. 10

चिन्तामपरिमेयां च प्रलयान्तामुपाश्रिताः ।

कामोपभोगपरमा एतावदिति निश्चिताः ॥११॥

Giving themselves over to endless  
cares terminating only with death, and  
given to the enjoyment of sensuous  
pleasures, they believe the highest limit  
of joy to consist only in this. 11

आशापाशशतैर्बद्धाः कामक्रोधपरायणाः ।

ईहन्ते कामभोगार्थमन्यायेनार्थसञ्चयान् ॥१२॥

Held in bondage by a hundred ties  
of expectation, given over to passion  
and anger, they strive to obtain by un-  
lawful means hoards of money for the  
enjoyment of sensuous pleasure. 12

## The Bhagavadgītā

इदमद्य मया लब्धमिमं प्राप्स्ये मनोरथम् ।

इदमस्तीदमपि मे भविष्यति पुनर्धनम् ॥१३॥

“This has been won by me today;  
that ambition I shall realize now; this  
wealth is mine already: that will be  
mine again. 13

असौ मया हतः शत्रुर्हनिष्ये चापरानपि ।

ईश्वरोऽहमहं भोगी सिद्धोऽहं बलवान्सुखी ॥१४॥

“This enemy has been already  
disposed of by me, and I shall make short  
work of others also. I am the Lord, I  
am the enjoyer: I am perfect, powerful  
and happy. 14

आढ्योऽभिजनवानस्मि कोऽन्योऽस्ति सदृशो मया ।

यक्ष्ये दास्यामि मोदिष्ये हृत्यज्ञानविमोहिताः ॥१५॥

## Chapter XVI

अनेकचित्तविभ्रान्ता मोहजालसमावृताः ।

प्रसक्ताः कामभोगेषु पतन्ति नरकेऽशुचौ ॥ १६ ॥

“I am wealthy, and high-born. Who else is like unto me ? I shall perform sacrifices, give alms and rejoice.” Thus deluded by ignorance, bewildered by numerous thoughts, enmeshed of the web of delusion and addicted of the enjoyment of sensuous pleasures, men of demoniacal nature fall into the foulest hell. 15, 16

आत्मसंभाविताः स्तब्धा धनमानमदान्विताः ।

यजन्ते नामयज्ञैस्ते दम्भेनाविधिपूर्वकम् ॥ १७ ॥

Self-important, unbending, filled with the intoxication of wealth and honour,

## The Bhagavadgītā

performing nominal sacrifices for show  
and contrary to scriptural ordinance. 17

अहंकारं बलं दर्पं कामं क्रोधं च संश्रिताः ।

मामात्मपरदेहेषु प्रद्विषन्तोऽभ्यसूयकाः ॥ १८ ॥

Given over to egoism, violence,  
insolence, passion and anger, these mali-  
cious persons hate Me that dwelt in the  
bodies of others as well as in their own. 18

तानहं द्विषतः क्रूरान्संसारेषु नराधमान् ।

क्षिपाम्यजस्रमशुभानासुरीष्वेव योनिषु ॥ १९ ॥

These haters, evil, cruel and vilest  
among men, I repeatedly throw into  
demoniacal wombs in this world. 19

आसुरीं योनिमापन्ना मूढा जन्मनि जन्मनि ।

मामप्राप्यैव कौन्तेय ततो यान्त्यधमां गतिम् । २० ।



## Chapter XVI

Arjuna, cast into demoniacal wombs, birth after birth, these fools, attaining not to Me, sink into still lower depths. 20

त्रिविधं नरकस्येदं द्वारं नाशनमात्मनः ।

कामः क्रोधस्तथा लोभस्तस्मादेतत्त्रयं त्यजेत् ॥२१॥

Passion, anger and greed, these constitute the triple gate to hell leading to the damnation of the soul. Therefore, one should shake off all these three. 21

एतैर्विमुक्तः कौन्तेय तमोद्वारैस्त्रिभिर्नरः ।

आचरत्यात्मनः श्रेयस्ततो याति परां गतिम् ॥२२॥

A man released from these three gates to hell, Arjuna, works his own

## The Bhagavadgītā

salvation and thereby reaches the highest goal ( i- e., Myself ). 22

यः शास्त्रविधिमुत्सृज्य वर्तते कामकारतः ।  
न स सिद्धिमवाप्नोति न सुखं न परां गतिम् ॥२३॥

He, who, having cast aside the injunctions of the scriptures, acts according to his own sweet will, attains not perfection, nor the highest goal, nor even happiness. 23

तस्माच्छास्त्रं प्रमाणं ते कार्याकार्यव्यवस्थितौ ।  
ज्ञात्वा शास्त्रविधानोक्तं कर्म कर्तुमिहार्हसि ॥२४॥

Therefore, let the scripture be your authority in determining what ought to

## Chapter XVI

be done and what ought not to be done. Knowing this, you should do here only such action as is sanctioned by scriptural ordinance. 24

ॐ तत्सदिति श्रीमद्भगवद्गीतासूपनिषत्सु ब्रह्मविद्यायां  
योगशास्त्रेश्रीकृष्णार्जुनसंवादे दैवासुरसंपद्विभाग-  
योगो नाम षोडशोऽध्यायः ॥ १६ ॥

Thus, in the Upaniṣad sung by the Lord, the science of Brahma, the scripture on Yoga, the dialogue between Śrī Kṛṣṇa and Arjuna, ends the sixteenth chapter entitled "The Yoga of Division between the Divine and the Demoniactal Properties."

## Chapter XVII

अर्जुन उवाच—

ये शास्त्रविधिमुत्सृज्य यजन्ते श्रद्धयान्विताः ।

तेषां निष्ठा तु का कृष्ण सखमाहो रजस्तमः ॥१॥

Arjuna said:

Those who, endowed with faith,  
worship the Devas, casting aside



## Chapter XVII

scriptural injunctions, where do they stand, Kṛṣṇa,—in Sattva, Rajas or Tamas ? 1

श्रीभगवानुवाच—

त्रिविधा भवति श्रद्धा देहिनां सा स्वभावजा ।

सात्त्विकी राजसी चैव तामसी चेति तां शृणु ॥ २ ॥

· Sri Bhagavān said:

That innate faith of men is of three kinds—Sattvic, Rajasic and Tamasic. Hear about it from Me. 2

सत्त्वानुरूपा सर्वस्य श्रद्धा भवति भारत ।

श्रद्धामयोऽयं पुरुषो यो यच्छ्रद्धः स एव सः ॥ ३ ॥

Arjuna, the faith of each is shaped to his own mental constitution. Faith constitutes the very being of man;

## The Bhagavadgītā

therefore, whatever the nature of his faith, that verily he is. 3

यजन्ते सात्विका देवान्यक्षरक्षांसि राजसाः ।

प्रेतान्भूतगणांश्चान्ये यजन्ते तामसा जनाः ॥ ४ ॥

Men of a Sattvic disposition worship the gods; those of a Rajasic disposition worship Yakṣas and Rākṣasas (demons); while others of a Tamasic disposition worship spirits and ghosts. 4

अशास्त्रविहितं घोरं तप्यन्ते ये तपो जनाः ।

दम्भाहंकारसंयुक्ताः कामरागबलान्विताः ॥ ५ ॥

Men who perform austere penance not enjoined by the scriptures, and are full of hypocrisy and egoism, and possessed of attachment, desire and pride of power, 5

## Chapter XVII

कर्षयन्तः शरीरस्थं भूतग्राममचेतसः ।

मां चैवान्तःशरीरस्थं तान्विद्ध्यासुरनिश्चयान् ॥ ६ ॥

And who torment the aggregate of elements that constitute the body, and Me, who dwell in the inner body, know those ignorant people to be of demoniacal resolve. 6

आहारस्त्वपि सर्वस्य त्रिविधो भवति प्रियः ।

यज्ञस्तपस्तथा दानं तेषां भेदमिमं शृणु ॥ ७ ॥

The food also, which is dear to all, (according to their respective nature) is of three kinds, even so sacrifice, penance and charity are of three kinds; hear their distinction as follows. 7

आयुःसखबलारोग्यसुखप्रीतिविवर्धनाः ।

रस्याः स्निग्धाः स्थिरा हृद्या आहाराः सात्त्विकप्रियाः

## The Bhagavadgītā

Foods which promote longevity, intelligence, strength, health, happiness and delight, which are sweet, bland, nourishing and agreeable, are dear to the Sattvic type of men. 8

कट्वम्ललवणात्युष्णतीक्ष्णरूक्षविदाहिनः ।

आहारा राजसस्येष्टा दुःखशोकामयप्रदाः ॥ ९ ॥

Foods which are bitter, acid, salted, very hot, pungent, dry, burning and giving rise to pain, grief and illness are dear to the Rajasic type of men. 9

यातयामं गतरसं पूति पर्युषितं च यत् ।

उच्छिष्टमपि चामेध्यं भोजनं तामसप्रियम् ॥ १० ॥

Food which is half-cooked, insipid, putrid, stale and polluted and also



## Chapter XVII

impure is dear to the Tamasic type of men. 10

अफलाकाङ्क्षिभिर्यज्ञो विधिदृष्टो य इज्यते ।

यष्टव्यमेवेति मनः समाधाय स सात्त्विकः ॥११॥

The sacrifice, which is offered as enjoined by scriptural ordinance, by men having no desire for fruit, under the firm belief that it is a duty which must be performed, is the Sattvic type of sacrifice. 11

अभिसंधाय तु फलं दम्भार्थमपि चैव यत् ।

इज्यते भरतश्रेष्ठ तं यज्ञं विद्धि राजसम् ॥१२॥

That sacrifice, however, which is offered with a view to fruit and also for the sake of ostentation, know it to be Rajasic, Arjuna. 12

## The Bhagavadgītā

विधिहीनमसृष्टान्नं मन्त्रहीनमदक्षिणम् ।  
श्रद्धाविरहितं यज्ञं तामसं परिचक्षते ॥१३॥

That sacrifice is said to be Tamasic, which is without sanction of the scriptures, in which no food is distributed, no sacred formula is chanted, and no fees are paid ( to the officiating priests ), and which is devoid of faith. 13

देवद्विजगुरुप्राज्ञपूजनं शौचमार्जवम् ।  
ब्रह्मचर्यमहिंसा च शरीरं तप उच्यते ॥१४॥

The worship of gods, Brahmans, elders, and the wise, purity, straightness, continence and non-violence—these are called austerity of the body. 14

अनुद्वेगकरं वाक्यं सत्यं प्रियहितं च यत् ।  
स्वाध्यायाभ्यसनं चैव वाङ्मयं तप उच्यते ॥१५॥

## Chapter XVII

Unoffensive, truthful, agreeable and wholesome speech, and practice of study of the sacred texts and Japa of the Divine Name—these are called austerity of speech. 15

मनःप्रसादः सौम्यत्वं मौनमात्मविनिग्रहः ।

भावसंशुद्धिरित्येतत्तपो मानसमुच्यते ॥१६॥

Cheerfulness of mind, serenity, habit of meditation on God, self-control, and purity of heart—these are called austerity of the mind. 16

श्रद्धया परया तप्तं तपस्तत्त्रिविधं नरैः ।

अफलाकाङ्क्षिभिर्युक्तैः सात्त्विकं परिचक्षते ॥१७॥

This threefold penance performed with supreme faith, by Yogis having no desire for fruit is said to be Sattvic. 17

## The Bhagavadgītā

सत्कारमानपूजार्थं तपो दम्भेन चैव यत् ।

क्रियते तदिह प्रोक्तं राजसं चलमध्रुवम् ॥ १८ ॥

The penance which is performed with the object of winning respect, honour and worship and for ostentation, which is unstable and transitory in effect, is said to be Rajasic. 18

मूढग्राहेणात्मनो यत्पीडया क्रियते तपः ।

परस्योत्सादनार्थं वा तत्तामसमुदाहृतम् ॥ १९ ॥

The penance done under a deluded understanding with torture to the mind, senses and body, or with the object of causing injury to another, is said to be Tamasic. 19

दातव्यमिति यद्दानं दीयतेऽनुपकारिणे ।

देशे काले च पात्रे च तद्दानं सात्त्विकं स्मृतम् ॥ २० ॥



## Chapter XVII

The gift which is made to one who does nothing in return, with the idea that it is one's duty to give, and with due regard to the place, time and recipient of the gift, is said to be Sattvic. 20

यत्तु प्रत्युपकारार्थं फलमुद्दिश्य वा पुनः ।

दीयते च परिक्लिष्टं तद्दानं राजसं स्मृतम् ॥ २१ ॥

The gift, however, which is made in a grudging mood, with the object of getting some service in return, or with a view to gain, is said to be Rajasic. 21

अदेशकाले यद्दानमपात्रेभ्यश्च दीयते ।

असत्कृतमवज्ञातं तत्तामसमुदाहृतम् ॥ २२ ॥

The gift which is made at an improper place and time and in a disrespectful and insulting manner to undeserving persons is said to be Tamasic. 22

## The Bhagavadgītā

ॐ तत्सदिति निर्देशो ब्रह्मणस्त्रिविधः स्मृतः ।

ब्राह्मणास्तेन वेदाश्च यज्ञाश्च विहिताः पुरा ॥ २३ ॥

Om, Tat, Sat—this is declared to be the threefold designation of the Absolute. At the beginning of creation, the Brahmins and the Vedas and sacrifices were created by it. 23

तस्मादोमित्युदाहृत्य यज्ञदानतपःक्रियाः ।

प्रवर्तन्ते विधानोक्ताः सततं ब्रह्मवादिनाम् ॥ २४ ॥

Therefore acts of sacrifice, gift and penance as enjoined by the scriptures are always commenced with the utterance of the word 'Om' by those who are entitled to chant the Vedas. 24

तदित्यनभिसंधाय फलं यज्ञतपःक्रियाः ।

दानक्रियाश्च विविधाः क्रियन्ते मोक्षकाङ्क्षिभिः ॥ २५ ॥

## Chapter XVII

With the idea that everything belongs to Him ( Tat ) the various acts of sacrifice, penance and gift are performed by the seekers of liberation without desiring any fruit in return. 25

सद्भावे साधुभावे च सदित्येतत्प्रयुज्यते ।  
प्रशस्ते कर्मणि तथा सच्छब्दः पार्थ युज्यते ॥२६॥

The Divine Name "Sat" is employed in the sense of truth and goodness; even so, Arjuna, the term "Sat" is used in the sense of a praiseworthy act. 26

यज्ञे तपसि दाने च स्थितिः सदिति चोच्यते ।  
कर्म चैव तदर्थीयं सदित्येवाभिधीयते ॥२७॥

Steadfastness in sacrifice, penance and gift is also designated as "Sat"; and verily

## The Bhagavadgītā

action for the sake of Him ( the Supreme Being ) is termed as “Sat”. 27

अश्रद्धया हुतं दत्तं तपस्तप्तं कृतं च यत् ।

असदित्युच्यते पार्थ न च तत्प्रेत्य नो इह ॥२८॥

Arjuna, sacrifice, gift and penance, and any other action, done without faith, is declared as “Asat” ( non-existent ). It is nought here or hereafter. 28

ॐ तत्सदिति श्रीमद्भगवद्गीतासूपनिषत्सु ब्रह्मविद्यायां  
योगशास्त्रे श्रीकृष्णार्जुनसंवादे श्रद्धात्रयविभाग-  
योगो नाम सप्तदशोऽध्यायः ॥ १७ ॥

Thus, in the Upaniṣad sung by the Lord, the science of Brahma, the scripture on Yoga, the dialogue between Śrī Kṛṣṇa and Arjuna, ends the seventeenth chapter entitled “The Yoga of the Division of the Threefold Faith”.





## Chapter XVIII

अर्जुन उवाच—

संन्यासस्य महाबाहो तत्त्वमिच्छामि वेदितुम्।  
त्यागस्य च हृषीकेश पृथक्केशिनिषूदन ॥ १ ॥

Arjuna said:

O Mighty-armed, O Knower of heart,  
O Slayer of Keśi, I wish to know severally

## The Bhagavadgītā

the true nature of Sannyāsa ( Sāṅkhya-yoga ) and of Tyāga ( Karmayoga ). 1

श्रीभगवानुवाच—

काम्यानां कर्मणां न्यासं संन्यासं कवयो विदुः।

सर्वकर्मफलत्यागं प्राहुस्त्यागं विचक्षणाः ॥ २ ॥

Sri Bhagavān said:

Some men of wisdom understand Sannyāsa as the renunciation of actions prompted by desire; other men of discernment define Tyāga as the relinquishing of the fruit of all actions. 2

त्याज्यं दोषवदित्येके कर्म प्राहुर्मनीषिणः ।

यज्ञदानतपःकर्म न त्याज्यमिति चापरे ॥ ३ ॥

Some sages declare that all action is evil, and as such should be abandoned: while others say that acts of sacrifice,

## Chapter XVIII

gift and penance should not be given up. 3

निश्चयं शृणु मे तत्र त्यागे भरतसत्तम ।

त्यागो हि पुरुषव्याघ्र त्रिविधः संप्रकीर्तितः ॥ ४ ॥

Of these two, O best of Bharatas, hear My own conclusion about Tyāga ( Relinquishment ). For relinquishment O lion among men, is declared to be of three kinds. 4

यज्ञदानतपःकर्म न त्याज्यं कार्यमेव तत् ।

यज्ञो दानं तपश्चैव पावनानि मनीषिणाम् ॥ ५ ॥

Acts of sacrifice, gift and penance should not be relinquished; they must be performed at all events. For sacrifice, gift and penance performed by wise men purify the heart. 5

## The Bhagavadgītā

एतान्यपि तु कर्माणि सङ्गं त्यक्त्वा फलानि च ।

कर्तव्यानीति मे पार्थ निश्चितं मतमुत्तमम् ॥ ६ ॥

Therefore, Arjuna, My considered and best opinion is that these acts of sacrifice, gift and penance, and all other duties, must be performed relinquishing attachment and fruit. 6

नियतस्य तु संन्यासः कर्मणो नोपपद्यते ।

मोहात्तस्य परित्यागस्तामसः परिकीर्तितः ॥ ७ ॥

(Prohibited action and action prompted by desire should no doubt be given up, ) but renunciation of action prescribed by the scriptures is not proper. Its abandonment through ignorance has been styled as partaking of Tamas, 7

दुःखमित्येव यत्कर्म कायक्लेशभयात्त्यजेत् ।

स कृत्वा राजसं त्यागं नैव त्यागफलं लभेत् ॥ ८ ॥



## Chapter XVIII

He who forsakes his duty for fear of bodily discomfort, saying that all action is troublesome, practising this Rajasic form of relinquishment, he does not get the fruit of relinquishment at all. 8

कार्यमित्येव यत्कर्म नियतं क्रियतेऽर्जुन ।

सङ्गं त्यक्त्वा फलं चैव स त्यागः सात्त्विको मतः ॥९॥

An action enjoined by the scriptures, which is done as a duty, giving up attachment and fruit, that alone is regarded as a Sattvic form of relinquishment. 9

न द्वेष्ट्यकुशलं कर्म कुशले नानुषज्जते ।

त्यागी सत्त्वसमाविष्टो मेधावी छिन्नसंशयः ॥१०॥

He who neither hates action, which does not lead to happiness, nor is attach-

## The Bhagavadgītā

ed to action, which is conductive to good, that person, imbued with the quality of goodness, has attained freedom from doubts; he is wise and a man of true renunciation. 10

न हि देहभृता शक्यं त्यक्तुं कर्माण्यशेषतः ।

यस्तु कर्मफलत्यागी स त्यागीत्यभिधीयते ॥ ११ ॥

Since it is not possible for embodied beings to renounce all action completely, hence it is said that he who renounces the fruit of action has truly renounced. 11

अनिष्टमिष्टं मिश्रं च त्रिविधं कर्मणः फलम् ।

भवत्यत्यागिनां प्रेत्य न तु संन्यासिनां क्वचित् ॥ १२ ॥

Good, evil and mixed—threefold is the fruit of action hereafter for those

## Chapter XVIII

who have not renounced the fruit;  
but there is none ever for those who  
have renounced the fruit. 12

पञ्चैतानि महाबाहो कारणानि निबोध मे ।

सांख्ये कृतान्ते प्रोक्तानि सिद्धये सर्वकर्मणाम् ॥ १३ ॥

Arjuna, for the accomplishment of  
all actions these five contributory causes  
have been mentioned in the Sāṅkhya  
system, which prescribes the means of  
eradicating all Karma. Know them from  
Me. 13

अधिष्ठानं तथा कर्ता करणं च पृथग्विधम् ।

विविधाश्च पृथक्चेष्टा दैवं चैवात्र पञ्चमम् ॥ १४ ॥

The body ( as the seat of all activity  
and the organs of action ), the agent  
( Jivātmā ) and the different kinds of

## The Bhagavadgītā

organs, as also the divergent activities of various kinds and the fifth, destiny—these are the causes (operating) here. 14

शरीरवाङ्मनोभिर्यत्कर्म प्रारभते नरः ।

न्याय्यं वा विपरीतं वा पञ्चैते तस्य हेतवः ॥ १५ ॥

Whatever action man performs by his body, speech and mind, be it right or wrong, these five are the causes thereof. 15

तत्रैवं सति कर्तारमात्मानं केवलं तु यः ।

पश्यत्यकृतबुद्धित्वान्न स पश्यति दुर्मतिः ॥ १६ ॥

Notwithstanding that, he who, owing to impure reason, views the absolute Self as the doer is of perverse understanding, and does not see at all. 16



## Chapter XVIII

यस्य नाहंकृतो भावो बुद्धिर्यस्य न लिप्यते ।

हत्वापि स इमाँल्लोकान्न हन्ति न निबध्यते ॥१७॥

He whose mind is free from the notion of doership and whose reason is not affected by worldly objects and worldly activities, even though he may kill all these people, he does not kill, nor is he bound ( by sin ). 17

ज्ञानं ज्ञेयं परिज्ञाता त्रिविधा कर्मचोदना ।

करणं कर्म कर्तेति त्रिविधः कर्मसंग्रहः ॥१८॥

Knowledge, the object of knowledge and knower—these are the threefold incentive to action; and the doer, the action and the organ of action—these are the threefold constituents of action. 18

## The Bhagavadgītā

ज्ञानं कर्म च कर्ता च त्रिधैव गुणभेदतः ।

प्रोच्यते गुणसंख्याने यथावच्छृणु तान्यपि ॥ १९ ॥

Knowledge and action as well as the doer are spoken of in the system classifying the three Guṇas as of three kinds due to difference of qualities. Hear them also duly from Me. 19

सर्वभूतेषु येनैकं भावमव्ययमीक्षते ।

अविभक्तं विभक्तेषु तज्ज्ञानं विद्धि सात्त्विकम् ॥ २० ॥

That by which man sees one imperishable entity in all beings, undivided among the divided, know that knowledge to be Sattvic. 20

पृथक्त्वेन तु यज्ज्ञानं नानाभावान्पृथग्विधान् ।

वेत्ति सर्वेषु भूतेषु तज्ज्ञानं विद्धि राजसम् ॥ २१ ॥

And that knowledge which regards the manifold existence of various kinds

## Chapter XVIII

in all beings as separate, know that knowledge as partaking of Rajas. 21

यत्तु कृत्स्नवदेकस्मिन्कार्ये सक्तमहैतुकम् ।  
अतस्त्वार्थवदल्पं च तत्तामसमुदाहृतम् ॥२२॥

And that knowledge which clings to one individual, as if it were the whole, which is without reason, without any real object and of little value, that is declared as Tamasic. 22

नियतं सङ्गरहितमरागद्वेषतः कृतम् ।  
अफलप्रेप्सुना कर्म यत्तत्सात्त्विकमुच्यते ॥२३॥

That action which is prescribed by scriptures, and which is done without the sense of doership, and without passion or prejudice, by one who does

## The Bhagavadgītā

not seek its fruit, is said to be  
Sattvic. 23

यत्तु कामेप्सुना कर्म साहंकारेण वा पुनः ।  
क्रियते बहुलायासं तद्राजसमुदाहृतम् ॥२४॥

And that action, which involves  
much strain, and is done by one who  
seeks enjoyment, and is prompted by  
egoism, is declared to be Rajasic. 24

अनुबन्धं क्षयं हिंसामनवेक्ष्य च पौरुषम् ।  
मोहादारभ्यते कर्म यत्तत्तामसमुच्यते ॥२५॥

That action, which is undertaken  
through ignorance, without considering  
the result, loss to oneself and injury to  
others and one's own capacity, is  
declared to be Tamasic. 25



## Chapter XVIII

मुक्तसङ्गोऽनहंवादी धृत्युत्साहसमन्वितः ।

सिद्धयसिद्धयोर्निर्विकारःकर्ता सात्त्विक उच्यते ॥२६॥

Freed from attachment, unegoistic, endowed with firmness and vigour and unaffected by success or failure, such a doer is said to be Sattvic. 26

रागी कर्मफलप्रेप्सुर्लुब्धो हिंसात्मकोऽशुचिः ।

हर्षशोकान्वितः कर्ता राजसः परिकीर्तितः ॥२७॥

The doer who is passionate and greedy, seeks the fruit of action, is given to violence and of impure conduct, and is affected by joy and sorrow, is declared to be Rajasic. 27

अयुक्तः प्राकृतः स्तब्धः शठो नैष्कृतिकोऽलसः ।

विषादी दीर्घसूत्री च कर्ता तामस उच्यते ॥२८॥

Lacking self-control and piety, vulgar, arrogant, deceitful, inclined to

## The Bhagavadgītā

rob others of their livelihood, slothful, despondent and procrastinating, such a doer is said to be Tamasic. 28

बुद्धेर्भेदं धृतेश्चैव गुणतस्त्रिविधं शृणु ।  
प्रोच्यमानमशेषेण पृथक्त्वेन धनंजय ॥२९॥

Hear now, Arjuna, the threefold division, according to the qualities, of reason as well as of firmness, which is being told by Me, unreservedly and severally. 29

प्रवृत्तिं च निवृत्तिं च कार्याकार्ये भयाभये ।  
बन्धं मोक्षं च या वेत्ति बुद्धिः सा पार्थ सात्त्विकी ३०

Arjuna, that reason which knows what is right action and what is right cessation of action, what must be done and what ought not to be done, what is fear and

## Chapter XVIII

what constitutes fearlessness, what is bondage and what is liberation, is Sattvic. 30

यया धर्ममधर्मं च कार्यं चाकार्यमेव च ।

अयथावत्प्रजानाति बुद्धिः सा पार्थ राजसी ॥३१॥

That reason by which one understands incorrectly what is right and what is wrong, what must be done and what ought not to be done, partakes of Rajas, O son of Kuntī. 31

अधर्मं धर्ममिति या मन्यते तमसावृता ।

सर्वार्थान्विपरीतांश्च बुद्धिः सा पार्थ तामसी ॥३२॥

That reason which, enveloped in ignorance, thinks the wrong to be right, and regards all things contrary, is Tamasic, Arjuna. 32

## The Bhagavadgītā

धृत्या यया धारयते मनःप्राणेन्द्रियक्रियाः ।

योगेनाव्यभिचारिण्या दृतिः सा पार्थ सात्त्विकी ३३

The unswerving firmness by which, through the Yoga of meditation, one controls the activities of the mind, life-breaths and senses, that firmness, Arjuna, is Sattvic. 33

यया तु धर्मकामार्थान्धृत्या धारयतेऽर्जुन ।

प्रसङ्गेन फलाकाङ्क्षी दृतिः सा पार्थ राजसी ॥ ३४ ॥

And the firmness by which the man, who seeks the fruit of actions, clutches with extreme fondness the first three objects of life, viz, Dharma (Virtue), Artha (Prosperity) and Kāma (Pleasure), that firmness, O son of Kuntī, is Rajasic. 34



## Chapter XVIII

यया स्वप्नं भयं शोकं विषादं मदमेव च ।

न विमुञ्चति दुर्मेधा दृतिः सा पार्थ तामसी ॥ ३५ ॥

And that by which a misguided fool does not abandon sleep, fear, grief, despondency and also arrogance, that firmness is Tamasic, Arjuna. 35

सुखं त्विदानीं त्रिविधं शृणु मे भरतर्षभ ।

अभ्यासाद्रमते यत्र दुःखान्तं च निगच्छति ॥ ३६ ॥

यत्तदग्रे विषमिव परिणामेऽमृतोपमम् ।

तत्सुखं सात्त्विकं प्रोक्तमात्मबुद्धिप्रसादजम् ॥ ३७ ॥

O chief of Bharatas, hear from Me now the three kinds of joy. That in which one finds enjoyment only through practice ( of Bhajana, meditation and worship ) and whereby one reaches the end of sorrow,—nay, that which appears like

## The Bhagavadgītā

poison in the beginning ( i. e., when the practices are started ), but tastes as nectar in the end, born of the placidity of mind brought about by meditation on God, such a joy is said to be Sattvic. 36, 37

विषयेन्द्रियसंयोगाद्यत्तदग्रेऽमृतोपमम् ।

परिणामे विषमिव तत्सुखं राजसं स्मृतम् ॥३८॥

The joy which is derived from the contact of the senses with their objects, though appearing like nectar in the beginning ( at the time of enjoyment ), proves to be mischievous like poison in the end. That is why such a joy is said to be Rajasic. 38

यदग्रे चानुबन्धे च सुखं मोहनमात्मनः ।

निद्रालस्यप्रमादोत्थं तत्तामसमुदाहृतम् ॥३९॥

## Chapter XVIII

The joy which deadens the soul, both in the beginning and in the end, and which is derived from sleep, indolence and carelessness is said to be Tamasic. 39

न तदस्ति पृथिव्यां वा दिवि देवेषु वा पुनः ।

सखं प्रकृतिजैर्मुक्तं यदेभिः स्यात्त्रिभिर्गुणैः ॥४०॥

There is no existence here on earth, in the heavens or among the celestials, or anywhere else in creation, which is free from these three qualities born of Matter. 40

ब्राह्मणक्षत्रियविशां शूद्राणां च परंतप ।

कर्माणि प्रविभक्तानि स्वभावप्रभवैर्गुणैः ॥४१॥

Arjuna, the duties of Brahmans, Kṣatriyas and Vaiśyas, as well as of Śūdras,

## The Bhagavadgītā

are divided according to the qualities  
born of their respective natures. 41

शमो दमस्तपः शौचं क्षान्तिरार्जवमेव च ।

ज्ञानं विज्ञानमास्तिक्यं ब्रह्मकर्म स्वभावजम् ॥४२॥

Control of mind, control of the senses,  
undergoing hardship for the sake of duty,  
purity ( both internal and external ),  
forgiveness, straightness of mind and  
body, belief in God, the scriptures and  
the other world, knowledge of the sacred  
lore and knowledge of God based on  
direct experience—these are the Brahman's  
duty, born of his own nature. 42

शौर्यं तेजो धृतिर्दाक्ष्यं युद्धे चाप्यपलायनम् ।

दानमीश्वरभावश्च क्षात्रं कर्म स्वभावजम् ॥४३॥

Prowess, majesty, firmness, bravery,  
ingenuity, not running away from battle,



## Chapter XVIII

generosity, rulership—these are the Kṣatriya's duty, born of his own nature. 43

कृषिगौरक्ष्यवाणिज्यं वैश्यकर्म स्वभावजम् ।

परिचर्यात्मकं कर्म शूद्रस्यापि स्वभावजम् ॥४४॥

Cultivation, protection of cows and trade are the Vaiśya's duty, born of his own nature. Service of all the three castes is the Śūdra's duty, born of his own nature. 44

स्वे स्वे कर्मण्यभिरतः संसिद्धिं लभते नरः ।

स्वकर्मनिरतः सिद्धिं यथा विन्दति तच्छृणु ॥४५॥

Devoted to his own duty, man attains the highest perfection (in the shape of God-Realization). Hear how one devoted to one's own duty attains perfection. 45

## The Bhagavadgītā

यतः प्रवृत्तिर्भूतानां येन सर्वमिदं ततम् ।

स्वकर्मणा तमभ्यर्च्य सिद्धिं विन्दति मानवः ॥४६॥

He from whom is the emanation of all beings, by whom all this is pervaded,—by worshipping Him through the performance of his own duty, man attains perfection. 46

श्रेयान्स्वधर्मो विगुणः परधर्मात्स्वनुष्ठितात् ।

स्वभावनियतं कर्म कुर्वन्नाप्नोति किल्बिषम् ॥४७॥

Better is one's own duty, though devoid of merit, than the duty of another well-executed. He, who performs the duty enjoined by his own nature, does not incur sin. 47

सहजं कर्म कौन्तेय सदोषमपि न त्यजेत् ।

सर्वारम्भा हि दोषेण धूमेनाग्निरिवावृताः ॥४८॥

## Chapter XVIII

Arjuna, one should not abandon one's duty which attaches to him from his very birth, even though defective. All undertakings, indeed, are tainted with some blemish, just as fire is clouded by smoke

48

असक्तबुद्धिः सर्वत्र जितात्मा विगतस्पृहः ।

नैष्कर्म्यसिद्धिं परमां संन्यासेनाधिगच्छति । ४९॥

He whose mind is unattached everywhere, who has subdued his self and whose thirst for enjoyment has completely disappeared, reaches through Sannyāsa ( the path of Knowledge ) the highest perfection of actionlessness ( i. e., freedom from the bondage of Karma through God-Realization ).

49

## The Bhagavadgītā

सिद्धिं प्राप्नोति यथा ब्रह्म तथाप्नोति निबोध मे ।

समासेनैव कौन्तेय निष्ठा ज्ञानस्य या परा ॥५०॥

Arjuna, know from Me briefly how he who has reached perfection ( in the shape of purity of heart ) attains Brahma, who constitutes the supreme consummation of the Yoga of Knowledge. 50

बुद्ध्या विशुद्धया युक्तो धृत्यात्मानं नियम्य च ।

शब्दादीन्निषयांस्त्यक्त्वा रागद्वेषौ व्युदस्य च ५१

विविक्तसेवी लब्धाशी यतवाक्कायमानसः ।

ध्यानयोगपरो नित्यं वैराग्यं समुपाश्रितः ॥५२॥

अहंकारं बलं दर्पं कामं क्रोधं परिग्रहम् ।

विमुच्य निर्ममः शान्तो ब्रह्मभूयाय कल्पते ॥५३॥

Endowed with pure reason, partaking of light and Sattvic food, living in a sacred and lonely place, having



## Chapter XVIII

renounced sound and other objects of the senses, having restrained the mind and the senses, and controlled speech, body and mind, taking a firm stand on dispassion after eradicating passion and prejudice, constantly absorbed in the Yoga of meditation, having abandoned egoism, violence, arrogance, lust, anger and greed, destitute of the feeling of meum and calm, such a one becomes qualified to be one with the Eternal. 51, 52, 53

ब्रह्मभूतः प्रसन्नात्मा न शोचति न काङ्क्षति ।

समः सर्वेषु भूतेषु मद्भक्तिं लभते पराम् ॥५४॥

Having become one with the Eternal, and cheerful in mind, he neither grieves nor desires. The same to all beings, he obtains supreme devotion to Me. 54

## The Bhagavadgītā

भक्त्या मामभिजानाति यावान्यश्चास्मि तत्त्वतः ।

ततो मां तत्त्वतो ज्ञात्वा विशते तदनन्तरम् ॥५५॥

Through devotion he comes to know Me in reality, what I am and who I am; and thereby knowing Me in essence. he forthwith enters into Me. 55

सर्वकर्माण्यपि सदा कुर्वाणो मद्व्यपाश्रयः ।

मत्प्रसादादवाप्नोति शाश्वतं पदमव्ययम् ॥५६॥

And the Karmayogī, who has taken refuge in Me, though ever performing all actions, attains through My grace the eternal, imperishable abode. 56

चेतसा सर्वकर्माणि मयि संन्यस्य मत्परः ।

बुद्धियोगमुपाश्रित्य मच्चित्तः सततं भव ॥५७॥

Therefore, mentally surrendering all actions to Me and with Myself as your

## Chapter XVIII

sole Object, have your mind constantly fixed on Me, resorting to the Yoga of equanimity. 57

मच्चित्तः सर्वदुर्गाणि मत्प्रसादात्तरिष्यसि ।

अथ चेत्त्वमहंकारान्न श्रोष्यसि विनङ्क्ष्यसि॥५८॥

With your mind thus fixed on Me, you shall get over all difficulties by My grace. And if out of pride you will not listen to Me, you will be utterly destroyed. 58

यदहंकारमाश्रित्य न योत्स्य इति मन्यसे ।

मिथ्यैष व्यवसायस्ते प्रकृतिस्त्वां नियोक्ष्यति॥५९॥

If, prompted by egoism, you think 'I will not fight,' this determination of yours is vain; nature will compel you to fight. 59

## The Bhagavadgītā

स्वभावजेन कौन्तेय निबद्धः स्वेन कर्मणा ।

कर्तुं नेच्छसि यन्मोहात्करिष्यस्यवशोऽपि तत् । ६० ।

Arjuna, that which from delusion you do not want to do, bound by your own duty born of your nature, you will helplessly perform. 60

ईश्वरः सर्वभूतानां हृद्देशेऽर्जुन तिष्ठति ।

भ्रामयन्सर्वभूतानि यन्त्रारूढानि मायया ॥ ६१ ॥

Arjuna, the Lord dwells in the hearts of all beings, who are mounted on the automaton of this body, causing them by his illusive power to revolve ( according to their actions ), 61

तमेव शरणं गच्छ सर्वभावेन भारत ।

तत्प्रसादात्परां शान्तिं स्थानं प्राप्स्यसि शाश्वतम् ॥ ६२ ॥

Seek refuge in Him alone with all your being, Arjuna. Through His grace



## Chapter XVIII

you shall obtain supreme peace and the eternal abode. 62

इति ते ज्ञानमाख्यातं गुह्याद् गुह्यतरं मया ।

विमृश्यैतदशेषेण यथेच्छसि तथा कुरु ॥६३॥

Thus has knowledge, more secret than secrecy itself, been imparted to you by Me. Having reflected on it fully, do as you like. 63

सर्वगुह्यतमं भूयः शृणु मे परमं वचः ।

इष्टोऽसि मे दृढमिति ततो वक्ष्यामि ते हितम् ॥६४॥

Hear, again, My supreme word, the most secret of all. You are very dear to Me; therefore, I shall tender you this salutary advice. 64

मन्मना भव मद्भक्तो मद्याजी मां नमस्कुरु ।

मामेवैष्यसि सत्यं ते प्रतिजाने प्रियोऽसि मे ॥६५॥

## The Bhagavadgītā

Fix your mind on Me, be devoted to Me, worship Me, and bow to Me; so shall you without doubt reach Me. This I truly promise to you; for you are dear to Me. 65

सर्वधर्मान्परित्यज्य मामेकं शरणं व्रज ।

ॐ हं त्वा सर्वपापेभ्यो मोक्षयिष्यामि मा शुचः॥ ६६॥

Surrendering all duties to Me, seek refuge in Me alone. I shall absolve you of all sins; grieve not. 66

इदं ते नातपस्काय नाभक्ताय कदाचन ।

न चाशुश्रूषवे वाच्यं न च मां योऽभ्यसूयति॥ ६७॥

This secret teaching should never be imparted to a man without austerity, nor to one without devotion; nor even to him who is unwilling to hear, nor again to him who finds fault with Me. 67

## Chapter XVIII

य इमं परमं गुह्यं मद्भक्तैष्वभिधास्यति ।

भक्तिं मयि परां कृत्वा मामेवैष्यत्यसंशयः ॥६८॥

He who, having shown the highest love to Me, shall impart this most secret teaching of Mine to My devotees, shall attain Me; there is no doubt about it. 68

न च तस्मान्मनुष्येषु कश्चिन्मे प्रियकृत्तमः ।

भविता न च मे तस्मादन्यः प्रियतरो भुवि ॥६९॥

Among men there is none who does Me a more loving service than he; nor shall anyone be dearer to Me than he on this earth. 69

अध्येष्यते च य इमं धर्म्यं संवादमावयोः ।

ज्ञानयज्ञेन तेनाहमिष्टः स्यामिति मे मतिः ॥७०॥

And he who shall study this sacred dialogue of ours, by him shall I be

## The Bhagavadgītā

worshipped through the sacrifice of wisdom. Such is My mind. 70

श्रद्धावाननसूयश्च शृणुयादपि यो नरः ।

सोऽपि मुक्तः शुभाँल्लोकान्प्राप्नुयात्पुण्यकर्मणाम् ७१

The man who listens to it full of faith and in an uncarping spirit, freed from evil, even he shall gain the happy worlds of the virtuous. 71

कच्चिदेतच्छ्रुतं पार्थ त्वयैकाग्रेण चेतसा ।

कच्चिदज्ञानसंमोहः प्रनष्टस्ते धनंजय ॥७२॥

Has this been heard by you with one-pointed mind, O son of Kuntī ? Has your delusion, born of ignorance, been destroyed, Arjuna ? 72

अर्जुन उवाच—

नष्टो मोहः स्मृतिर्लब्धा त्वत्प्रसादान्मयाच्युत ।

स्थितोऽस्मि गतसन्देहः करिष्ये वचनं तव ॥७३॥



## Chapter XVIII

Arjuna said:

Kṛṣṇa, my delusion is destroyed and I have gained knowledge through Your Grace. I stand freed from doubts; I shall, therefore, carry out Your bidding. 73

संजय उवाच—

इत्थं वासुदेवस्य पार्थस्य च महात्मनः ।

संवादमिममश्रौषमद्भुतं रोमहर्षणम् ॥७४॥

Saṅjaya said:

Thus I heard the marvellous and thrilling conversation between Śrī Kṛṣṇa and the high-souled Arjuna. 74

व्यासप्रसादाच्छ्रुतवानेतद्गुह्यमहं परम् ।

योगं योगेश्वरात्कृष्णास्साक्षात्कथयतः स्वयम् ॥७५॥

Through the grace of Vyāsa I heard this supremely secret Yoga from the Lord

## The Bhagavadgītā

of Yoga, Śrī Kṛṣṇa Himself, speaking  
before my very eyes. 75

राजन्संस्मृत्य संस्मृत्य संवादमिममद्भुतम् ।

केशवार्जुनयोः पुण्यं हृष्यामि च मुहुर्मुहुः ॥७६॥

O King, recollecting, again and  
again, this wonderful and sacred dialogue  
of Śrī Kṛṣṇa and Arjuna, I rejoice over  
and over again. 76

तच्च संस्मृत्य संस्मृत्य रूपमत्यद्भुतं हरेः ।

विस्मयो मे महान् राजन्हृष्यामि च पुनः पुनः ॥७७॥

Lord, remembering also, over and  
over again, that most marvellous form of  
Śrī Kṛṣṇa, great is my wonder, and I am  
delighted, again and again, 77

यत्र योगेश्वरः कृष्णो यत्र पार्थो धनुर्धरः ।

तत्र श्रीर्विजयो भूतिर्धुवा नीतिर्मतिर्मम ॥७८॥

## Chapter XVIII

Wherever is Śrī Kṛṣṇa, the Lord of Yoga, and wherever is Arjuna, the wielder of the Gāṇḍīva bow, assured are there prosperity, victory, glory and righteousness; this is my conviction. 78

ॐ तत्सदिति श्रीमद्भगवद्गीतासूपनिषत्सु ब्रह्मविद्यायां  
योगशास्त्रे श्रीकृष्णार्जुनसंवादे मोक्षसंन्यास-  
योगो नामाष्टादशोऽध्यायः ॥ १८ ॥

Thus, in the Upaniṣad sung by the Lord, the science of Brahma, the scripture on Yoga, the dialogue between Śrī Kṛṣṇa and Arjuna' ends the eighteenth chapter entitled "The Yoga of Liberation through the path of Knowledge and Self-Surrender."



Om Tat Sat





## God-Realization through Practice of Renunciation

त्यक्त्वा कर्मफलासङ्गं नित्यतृप्तो निराश्रयः ।  
कर्मण्यभिप्रवृत्तोऽपि नैव किञ्चित्करोति सः ॥  
न हि देहभृता शक्यं त्यक्तुं कर्माण्यशेषतः ।  
यस्तु कर्मफलत्यागी स त्यागीत्यभिधीयते ॥

Living even the life of a householder, man can realize God through the practice of renunciation. Indeed, 'renunciation' is the principal means for attaining God. Therefore, dividing them into seven classes, the marks of renunciation are being shortly written below.

## ( 1 ) Total Renunciation of Prohibited Acts

This is non-performance, in any way whatsoever, through mind, speech and the body, low acts prohibited by the scriptures, such as, theft, adultery, falsehood, deception, fraud, oppression, violence, taking of interdicted food and wrong-doing, etc.

## ( 2 ) Renunciation of Acts performed for the Satisfaction of Worldly Desires

This is non-performance of sacrifices, charities, austerities, worship and other desire-born actions, with a selfish motive,\* for gaining objects of enjoy-

---

\* If under the pressure of circumstance, one is compelled to do an act sanctioned

ment. e. g., wife, progeny and wealth, etc. or with the object of curing diseases and terminating other forms of suffering. This is the second type of renunciation.

### ( 3 ) Total Renunciation of Worldly Thirst

Honour, fame, social prestige, wife, progeny, wealth and whatever other transient objects are automatically gained by the force of Prārabdha ( Karma, which has begun to bear fruit ), the

---

by tradition and the scriptures, which is by nature rooted in desire, but non-performance of which causes pain to anybody or adversely affects the traditional ways of Action and worship, performance of it disinterestedly, and only for general good, is not an act for the satisfaction of desire.

desire for their increase should be regarded as an obstacle in God-Realization, and renounced. This is the third type of renunciation.

( 4 ) Renunciation of the Habit of  
Extracting Service from  
others with a Selfish  
Motive

Asking for money, or demanding service from another, for personal happiness; and acceptance of things and service given without one's asking for the same; or entertaining any desire in the mind for getting by any means one's self-interest served by another; all these and similar ideas of getting service from another for the satisfaction of self-interest should be



renounced.\* This is the fourth type of renunciation.

(5) Total Renunciation of Indolence  
and Desire for Fruit in the  
Performance of all Duties

Whatever duties there are, e. g.,  
cultivation of devotion to God, worship

---

\* If non-acceptance of physical service from another, or offer of eatables by another, where one is entitled to accept such service or offer, causes any pain to anyone, or in any way hinders the education of the people, in that case, acceptance of service, abandoning selfishness, and only for the pleasure of the offerer of service, is not harmful. For non-acceptance of service done by the wife, son or servant, or of eatables offered by friends and relatives, is likely to cause them pain and may prove harmful, so far as propriety of social conduct is concerned.

of the celestials, service of the parents and other elders, performance of sacrifices, charities and austerities, maintenance of the household through the earning of livelihood by means of works assigned according to the Varṇāśrama system, and taking of food and drink, etc. for the body,—in the performance of these, indolence and every form of desire should be renounced.

( A ) Renunciation of Indolence  
in the Practice of Devotion  
to God

Regarding it as the supreme duty of one's life, one should hear, reflect on, read and discourse on the mysterious stories of the virtue, glory and Love of God, who is extremely compassionate,

friend of all, the best of lovers, the knower of the heart, and renouncing idleness practise constant Japa, together with meditation, of His extremely hallowed Name.

### ( B ) Renunciation of Desire in the Practice of Devotion to God

Regarding all enjoyments of this world and the next as transient and perishable and hindrances in the path of Devotion to God, no prayer should be offered to God for obtaining any object whatsoever, nor any desire should be entertained in the mind for the same. Also, prayer should not be offered to God for the removal of any trouble even when one is overtaken by it; in other words, the thought should

be cultivated in the mind that to sacrifice life is preferable to bringing stain on the purity of Bhakti for the sake of this false existence. For instance, Prahlāda, even though intensely persecuted by his father, never offered any prayer to God for the removal of his distress.

Curse with harsh expressions, such as, "Let the chastizement of God be on you", etc., should not be pronounced even against the persecutor, or one who does any injury, and no thought of counter-injury should be entertained against him.

Out of pride of attainment in the path of Devotion, benedictions should not be pronounced in words, such as "May God restore you to health," "May God



remove your distress", "May God grant you a long life", etc.

In correspondence also, words of worldly interest should not be written. In Marwari society, there is a general custom of writing such words of worldly import in the form of prayer to God for obtaining worldly objects, e. g., "God is our helper here and elsewhere", "God will advance our sales", "God will bring a good monsoon", "God will remove the ailment", etc. Instead of this, auspicious, disinterested words, such as, "God in His state of Bliss exists everywhere", "Performance of Bhajana is the essence of everything", etc., should be written, and other than these no word of worldly interest should be written or uttered.

( C ) Renunciation of Indolence and  
Desire in Connection  
with the Worship  
of Celestials

There is God's instruction to offer worship to the celestials, who are worthy of being worshipped, during the time appointed for such worship, according to the scriptures as well as tradition. Regarding the carrying out of God's instruction as one's supreme duty, such worship should be offered to a celestial with enthusiasm, according to the prescribed rules, without expression of any desire for the satisfaction of any worldly interest.

With the object of such worship words implying worldly interest should not be written on the cash-book, and other books of account. For instance, in Marwari society there is a custom on the New Year or Dewāli day, after the worship of Goddess Lakṣmī, to write many words implying worldly desire, such as, "Goddess Lakṣmī will bring profit", "The store will be kept full", "Prosperity and success will be brought," "Under the protection of Goddess Kālī", "Under the protection of Goddess Gangā", etc. These should be substituted by unselfish, suspicious words, such as, "Śri Lakṣmīnārāyaṇa, in the form of Bliss, is present everywhere", or "Goddess Lakṣmī has been worshipped with great delight and enthusiasm." Similarly, while writing

the daily cash-book, this procedure should be followed.

( D ) Renunciation of Indolence and  
Desire in the Service of  
Parents and other  
Elders

It is man's supreme duty to render daily services, in all possible ways, to parents, the preceptor, and other persons who are one's superior in Varṇa, Āśrama, age, qualifications, or in whatever other respect it may be, and daily offer them obeisances. Cultivating this thought in the mind and abandoning all idleness disinterested, enthusiastic, and according to God's behests, service should be rendered to them.



(E) Renunciation of Indolence and  
Desire in the Performance of  
Sacrifices, Charities,  
Austerities and other  
Auspicious Deeds

Sacrifices, e. g., the daily obligatory five Great Sacrifices\*, and other occasional sacrifices should be performed. Through gifts of food, clothing, learning, medicine, and wealth, etc., attempt should be made according to one's

---

\* The five Great Sacrifices are as follows—

(1) Sacrifice to gods (performance of Agnihotra, etc.); (2) Sacrifice to Ṛṣis (study of the Vedas, performance of Sandhyā and Japa of Gāyatri etc.); (3) Sacrifice to the Manes (performance of Tarpas, Śrāddha etc.); (4) Sacrifice to Men (entertainment of guests); (5) Sacrifice to all created beings (performance of Balivaiśwadeva).

capacity, to make all creatures happy, through mind, speech and the body. Similarly, all forms of bodily suffering should be undergone for the preservation of Dharma. These duties enjoined by the scriptures should be performed, with faith and enthusiasm, according to God's behest, regarding them as supremely important, wholly renouncing the desire for all kinds of enjoyment of this world and the next.

( F ) Renunciation of Indolence and  
Desire in the Performance of  
proper Works for Maintenance  
of the Family through  
earning of Livelihood

It is God's injunction that the family should be maintained through

service to the world by performing duties laid down in the scriptures for the respective Varnas and Āśramas, even as agriculture, cattle-breeding and trade have been laid down as the works of livelihood for the Vaiśya. Therefore, regarding them as duties, treating profit and loss as equal, and renouncing all forms of desire such works should be enthusiastically performed.\*

---

\* Works performed by a person in the above spirit, being freed from greed, cannot be tainted by evil in any way, for in works of livelihood greed is the particular cause which leads one to the commission of sin. Therefore, just as Vaiśyas have been advised at length to give up evil practices connected with trade in the footnote of the Hindi rendering of Chapter XVIII verse 44 of the edition of the *Gītā* published by the Gita Press,

## ( G ) Renunciation of Indolence and Desire in Works for Preservation of the Body

In works for preservation of the body, according to the scriptures, e. g., pertaining to food, dress, medicines etc., the desire for enjoyment should be renounced. They should be performed, according to the needs of the occasion, only with the object of God-Realization, regarding pleasure and pain, profit and loss, life and death as equal.

---

Gorakhpur, even so men should renounce all forms of evil connected with their respective duties as laid down by the Varṇāśrama system, and perform all their duties, for God's sake, disinterestedly, regarding them as injunctions of God.



Together with the four types of renunciation stated above, when according to this fifth type of renunciation, all evils and all forms of desire are destroyed, and there remains only the one strong desire for God-Realization, it should be regarded as the mark of the person, who has attained ripeness in the first stage of Wisdom.

(6) Total Renunciation of the Sense  
of Meum and Attachment with  
regard to all Worldly Objects  
and Activities

All worldly objects like wealth, house, clothes etc., all relations like the wife, child, friends etc., and all forms of enjoyment of this world and the next like honour, fame, prestige,

etc. being transient and perishable, and regarding them as impermanent, the sense of meum and attachment with regard to them should be renounced. Similarly, having developed pure, exclusive Love for God alone, the embodiment of Existence, Knowledge and Bliss, all sense of meum and attachment should be renounced for all works done through the mind, speech and body, and even for the body itself. This is the sixth type of renunciation.\*

---

\* The renunciation of thirst, as well as the renunciation of the desire for fruit, with regard to all objects and activities, have been described above as the third and fifth types of renunciation, but even after such renunciation the sense of meum and attachment for them are left as residues; just as even though

Men who reach the stage of this sixth form of renunciation, developing dispassion for all things of the world, get exclusive Love for God alone, the supreme embodiment of Love. Therefore, they, retiring to a solitary place, like only to hear, and talk about, the stories of God's spotless Love, which reveal the virtues, glory and secrets of God and reflect on the same, and practise Bhajana, meditation and study

---

Bharata Muni through practices of Bhajana and meditation and cultivation of Satsanga, had renounced all thirst and desire for fruit with regard to all objects and activities, his sense of meum and attachment for the deer and protection of the deer remained. That is why renunciation of the sense of meum and attachment for all objects and activities has been described as the sixth type of renunciation.

of the scriptures. They develop a distaste for wasting even a moment of their valuable time in the company of men attached to the world and indulging in laughter, luxury, carelessness, backbiting, enjoyments and idle talks. They perform all their duties reflecting on God's Form and Name, only for God's sake, and without any worldly attachment.

Thus, through renunciation of the sense of meum and attachment with regard to all objects and activities, development of pure Love for God alone, the embodiment of Existence, Knowledge and Bliss, should be regarded as the mark of one who has attained ripeness in the second stage of Wisdom.



( 7 ) Total Renunciation of Subtle  
Desires and Egotism with  
regard to the World,  
the Body and all  
Actions

All objects of the world being creations of Māyā, are wholly transient, and one God alone, the embodiment of Existence, Knowledge and Bliss, equally and completely pervades everywhere, this idea having been firmly established, all subtle desires with regard to objects of the world, including the body, and every form of activity have to be totally renounced. In other words, there should be no pictures of them in the mind in the form of impressions.

And due to total lack of identification with the body, there should be no trace of any sense of doership with regard to all actions done through the mind, speech and body. This is the seventh type of renunciation.\*

The mental impulses of persons, who attain Supreme Dispassion† in

---

\* Even when there is total negation of thirst, of the desire for fruit, of the sense of meum and attachment with regard to all objects of the world and all forms of activity, there remain subtle desire and feeling of doership as residues. That is why renunciation of subtle desire and egotism has been described as the seventh type of renunciation.

† In the person, who has reached the sixth stage of renunciation stated above, there may be, now and then, some slight

the form of this seventh type of renunciation, get totally withdrawn from all objects of the world. If at any time any worldly impulse makes its appearance, the impression does not get firmly established, for exclusive and close union of such persons with Vāsudeva, the Paramātmā, the embodiment of Existence, Knowledge and Bliss, constantly remains intact.

---

manifestation of attachment, when there is any special contact with objects of enjoyment; but in the person, who has reached the seventh stage of renunciation, there can be no attachment, even when there is contact with objects of enjoyment for in his conception, except God, no other object remains. That is why this renunciation has been described as Supreme Dispassion.

Therefore, in his mind, all defects and vices having ceased to exist, virtues like Ahimsā<sup>1</sup>, Truth<sup>2</sup>, Non-Stealing<sup>3</sup>, Continence<sup>4</sup>, Abstaining from vilification<sup>5</sup>, Modesty, Unhaughtiness<sup>6</sup>, Artlessness, Purity<sup>7</sup>, Content-

---

1. Non-infliction of suffering on any creature through mind, speech and the body.

2. Statement of facts in sweet words, representing exactly what is realized by the mind and the senses.

3. Total lack of theft.

4. Lack of eight forms of sexual enjoyment.

5. Not to make any damaging statement against anybody.

6. Want of desire for reception, honour, public address, etc.

7. Both external and internal purity. ( Truthful and pure means of earning gives purity to wealth; food obtained by that wealth imparts purity to food; proper behaviour



ment<sup>1</sup>, Endurance<sup>2</sup>, Satsanga, Spirit  
of Service, Sacrifice, Charity, Austerity<sup>3</sup>,  
Study<sup>4</sup>, Mind-control, Sense-control,  
Humility, Straightness<sup>5</sup>, Compassion,

---

is purity of conduct; purification of the body  
through use of water, earth, etc.—all this is  
called external purity. Through destruction  
of modifications like attraction, repulsion and  
deception, etc. when the mind becomes trans-  
parent and pure, it is called internal purity. )

1. Want of thirst for worldly things.
2. Bearing contradictory experiences like  
heat and cold, pleasure and pain, etc.
3. Sufferings undergone for the practice  
of one's own Dharma.
4. Study of the Vedas and other  
elevating scriptures and practice of Kirtana  
of God's Name and glory.
5. This means straightness of the body  
and mind, together with the senses.

Faith<sup>1</sup>, Discrimination<sup>2</sup>, Dispassion<sup>3</sup>,  
Living in seclusion, Poverty<sup>4</sup>, Lack  
of doubt and distruction, Cessation  
of Desires, Personal Magnetism<sup>5</sup>,  
Forgiveness<sup>6</sup>, Patience<sup>7</sup>, Absence of

---

1. Belief, as strong as in things directly perceived, in the Vedas, in the scriptures and in the sayings of saints, the preceptor and God.

2. Real knowledge about what is true and what is false.

3. Total lack of attachment for anything belonging to any region up to Brahmaloaka,

4. Want of accumulation of wealth with the sense of meum.

5. It is that power of superior souls under the influence of which even wicked, worldly-minded men generally abstain from sinful conduct and engages themselves in virtuous deeds according to their behests.

6. Lack of desire to inflict any form of punishment on one who does an injury.

7. Not to get upset even in the face of the greatest difficulty.

malice<sup>1</sup>, Fearlessness<sup>2</sup>, Pridelessness, Peace<sup>3</sup>, Exclusive Devotion to God, etc., naturally make their appearance.

Thus through the total lack of desire and egotism in regard to all objects, including the body, constant maintenance intact of identity with God is the mark of the person who has attained ripeness in the third stage of Wisdom.

Some of the virtues mentioned above appear in the first and second stages, but all the virtues make their

---

1. Not to bear malice even against one who is maliciously disposed.

2. Total absence of fear.

3. Total absence of desires and cravings and maintenance of constant cheerfulness in the mind.

appearance generally in the third stage. For these are the marks of persons, who have reached very near God-Realization, and are the means of attainment of direct knowledge of God. That is why in Chapter XIII of the *Gītā* ( verses 7 to 11 ) Bhagavān Śrī Kṛṣṇa enumerated most of these virtues as Knowledge and in Chapter XVI ( verses 1 to 3 ) described them as the divine qualities.

Moreover, the scriptural authorities regard these virtues as the common Dharma of humanity. All men are entitled to them. Therefore, depending on God, all should make special effort to develop the above virtues in their mind.



## Conclusion

In this article it has been said that God may be realized through seven types of renunciation. Among them, it has been stated that, the first five types of renunciation indicate the first stage of Wisdom, renunciations up to the sixth type indicate the marks of the second stage of Wisdom, and renunciations up to the seventh type indicate the marks of the third stage of Wisdom. He, who attains ripeness in the third stage of Wisdom above, at once realizes God, the embodiment of Existence, Knowledge and Bliss. Thereafter he loses all connection with this transient, destructible, impermanent world. Just as the person awakened from a dream loses all connection with the dream-world, even

so the person awakened from the dream of ignorance loses all connection with the impermanent world, the creation of Māyā. Though from the point of view of the world, all forms of activities are observed as taking place through the body of that person under the force of Prārabdha, and the world gains a lot by such activities, for being freed from desires, attachment and the sense of doership, whatever the Mahātmā does through his mind, speech and body becomes the standard of right conduct in the world, and from the ideas of such a Mahātmā scriptures are formed, yet that person, who has realized Vāsudeva, the embodiment of Existence, Knowledge and Bliss, lives wholly beyond Māyā, consisting of the three Guṇas. Therefore, he during illumina-

tion, activity and sleep, etc., which are the effect of the Guṇas, does not hate them, nor, when they cease, desires for them. For, with regard to pleasure and pain, gain and loss, honour and ignominy, praise and blame, etc., and with regard to earth, stone and gold, etc., he attains an attitude of equanimity. Therefore, that Mahātmā when obtaining a desirable object, or in the cessation of what is undesirable, does not feel delighted, nor does he feel any grief when obtaining an undesirable object, or in the loss of what is dear or desirable. If for any reason, his body is cut by a weapon, or he is faced with any other form of extreme suffering, that man of wisdom, established exclusively in God, the embodiment of Truth, Knowledge and Bliss, does not



fall from that state of existence. For in his mind, the whole world appears as a mirage, and no other existence appears to him beyond the existence of one God, the embodiment of Truth, Knowledge and Bliss. What more should we say about him; the state of that soul, who has realized God, the embodiment of Truth, Knowledge and Bliss, is in reality, known to him alone. None possesses the power to reveal it through the mind, intellect and senses. Therefore, awakening as soon as possible from the sleep of ignorance, and taking shelter under the care of a saint, and according to his instructions, one should earnestly take to the practice of a discipline for realizing God through the seven types of renunciation stated above. For this extremely valuable



human life is attained, only through the grace of God, at the end of many births. Therefore, the invaluable time allotted to this life should not be wasted in indulging in the perishable, transient impermanent enjoyment of this world.



---

Printed and Published by Hanumanprasad Poddar  
at the Gita Press, Gorakhpur  
India.

